



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

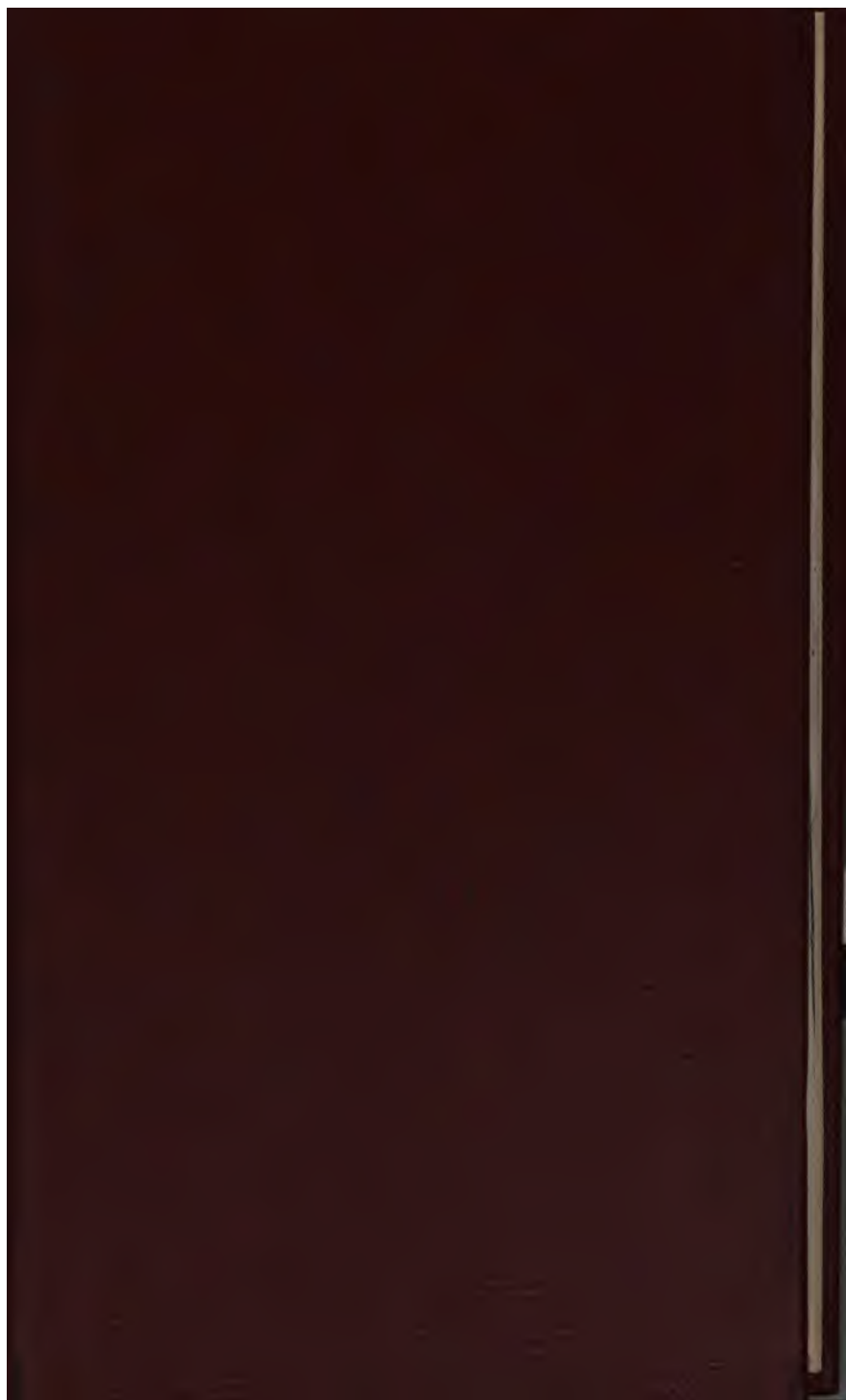
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

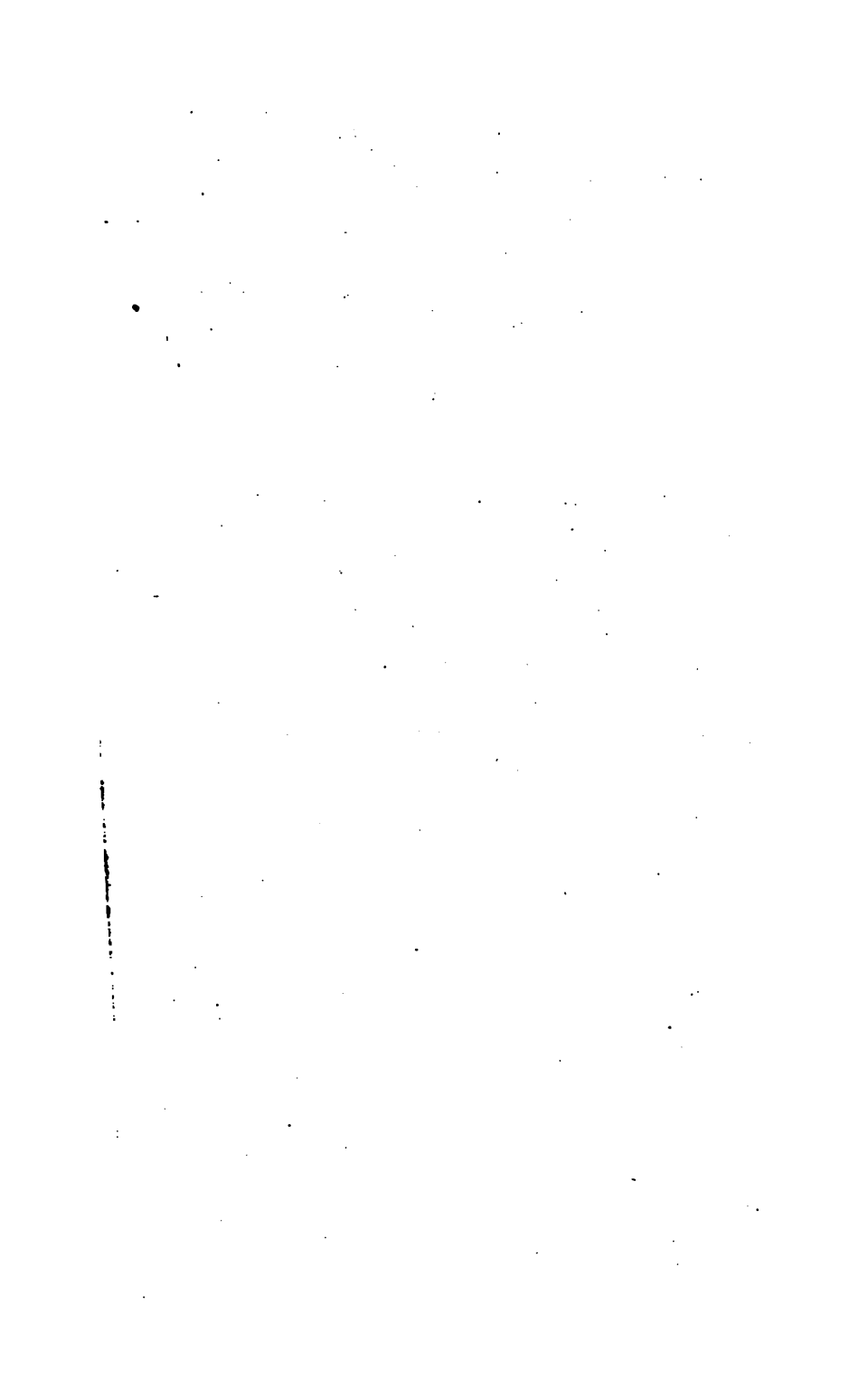




HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY







**A GUIDE**  
TO THE  
**ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE:**

**A GRAMMAR**

**AFTER ERASMUS RASK;  
TRACTS IN PROSE AND VERSE, WITH NOTES, ETC.  
FOR THE USE OF LEARNERS.**

**With an Appendix.**

**BY  
EDWARD JOHNSTON VERNON, B.A.  
MAGDALENE HALL.**

**Antiquam exquirite Matrem.**

**A NEW EDITION.**



**LONDON:  
JOHN RUSSELL SMITH  
36, SOHO SQUARE.  
MDCCLXV.**

9286.50.3

~~9286.50.3~~



Harvard College Library

FROM

C. W. Sever

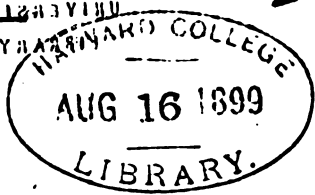
~~02952~~



5/-

024  
552

9286.50.3  
~~5073~~ HARVARD COLLEGE



C. W. Sever

TO  
JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ. D.C.J.

Principal of Magdalene Hall,

ETC. ETC.

IN TOKEN OF  
RESPECT AND ESTEEM

## P R E F A C E.

---

ANGLO-SAXON was spoken by our forefathers in England for more than five hundred years; from it have sprung the greater part of our local and family names, very many of our old, and almost all our provincial words and sayings, and fifteen twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman therefore altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue, while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with modern German.\*

The present object is to furnish the learner, if it may be, with a cheaper, easier, more comprehensive, and not less trustworthy guide to this tongue than may hitherto have been within his reach.

The first six chapters are mainly abridged from the Grammar of the late Professor Rask of Copenhagen, as edited by Mr. Thorpe, whom the compiler has to thank for leave to make use of his praiseworthy labours, and for obliging answers to queries.

\* See Thorpe's Advertisement to Rask's Grammar

Some alterations and additions seemed called for by the progress of the study since the publication of that work, whence its improved cultivation in this country must be dated. Illustrations from the kindred new Teutonic dialects German and Dutch, with some from Greek and Latin, old and provincial English &c. have taken the place of the Scandinavian\* references as fitter for the English learner. A view, however narrow and imperfect, of languages more or less nearly akin, can hardly fail, it is hoped, to awaken in the understanding student, a wish to know something more of comparative philology, hitherto so unworthily slighted among ourselves, and so laboriously and skilfully worked out by the Germans.

The hyphen is used throughout to divide the parts of compound words from each other, as also prefixes, and when needful, case-endings and other terminations, from roots; in this as in other tongues, the beginner must accustom himself to parse not only every word in a phrase, but every syllable in a word.

Some rules for gender have been attempted, and a list of exceptions to the general rule of its agreement with the German, together with comparative tables of the cardinal numbers, and of the chief tenses, are added.

The accent, sometimes misplaced or left out by Rask, and too often altogether neglected by others, has been carefully attended to.

\* Some acquaintance with Icelandic and the other old northern tongues, above all Gothic, which shows the originals of the A. S. inflections, quantity &c., is of course needful for a perfect knowledge of Anglo-Saxon.

for those faults both of doing, and of leaving undone, which he cannot hope to have avoided, he alone has to answer. Should this imperfect attempt however, by making the speech of the Anglo-Saxons somewhat easier and more attractive than heretofore to their children, give any of these a better knowledge of the real structure, and true spirit, and a greater love for the power and worth of that tongue, which bids fair one day to overspread the whole earth, some time and labour will not have been spent in vain.

---

TO  
JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ. D.C.I.

Principal of Magdalene Hall.

ETC. ETC.

IN TOKEN OF  
RESPECT AND ESTEEM

# CONTENTS.

---

	Page.
Preface . . . . .	v

## CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.

1. Alphabet &c. . . . .	1
2. Accent . . . . .	2
3. Pronunciation . . . . .	3
4. Spelling . . . . .	4
5. Change of Letters . . . . .	5
6. Correspondence of do. . . . .	7

## CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.

1. Genders . . . . .	8
2. Inflection . . . . .	10
3. Simple Order, or Declension I. . . . .	12
4. Complex Order. Declension II. Class 1. . . . .	14
5. — — — — — 2. . . . .	14
6. — — — — — 3. . . . .	16
7. Complex Order. Declension III. Class 1. . . . .	17
8. — — — — — 2. . . . .	18
9. — — — — — 3. . . . .	19

## CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES.

1. Inflection . . . . .	20
2. Definite Declension . . . . .	21
3. Indefinite Declension I. . . . .	22
4. — — — — — II. . . . .	23
5. Comparison . . . . .	24
6. Irregular do. . . . .	25



**CHAPTER IV.—PRONOUNS.**

	<b>Page.</b>
1. Personal . . . . .	27
2. Possessive . . . . .	29
3. Demonstrative . . . . .	30
4. Interrogative . . . . .	31
5. Indefinite . . . . .	32
6. Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	33
7. Ordinal do. . . . .	35

**CHAPTER V.—VERBS.**

1. Conjugation . . . . .	37
2. Chief Tenses . . . . .	38
3. Simple Order, or Conjugation I. . . . .	39
4. Conjugation I. Class 1. . . . .	41
5. — — — 2. . . . .	42
6. — — — 3. . . . .	45
7. Complex Order . . . . .	46
8. Conjugation II. Class 1. . . . .	48
9. — — — 2. . . . .	50
10. — — — 3. . . . .	53
11. Conjugation III. . . . .	54
12. Conjugation III. Class 1. . . . .	55
13. — — — 2. . . . .	58
14. — — — 3. . . . .	59
15. Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	60
16. Auxiliaries &c. . . . .	62

**CHAPTER VI.—FORMATION OF WORDS.**

1. Prefixes . . . . .	63
2. Nominal Terminations . . . . .	65
3. Adjectival do. . . . .	67
4. Verbal do. . . . .	68
5. Particles . . . . .	69
6. Composition . . . . .	71

# CONTENTS.

xi

## CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX.

	PAGE.
1. Syntax . . . . .	73
2. Syntax of Nouns . . . . .	74
3. — — Adjectives . . . . .	76
4. — — Verbs . . . . .	78
5. — — Prepositions . . . . .	87
6. — — Conjunctions . . . . .	92
7. — — Interjections . . . . .	96

## CHAPTER VIII.—PROSE EXTRACTS.

1. S. Matthew, XII. 1—13. . . . .	98
2. S. Mark, VI. 32. . . . .	100
3. S. Luke, XX. 9—25. . . . .	104
4. S. John, VII. 14—28. . . . .	107
5. Genesis, XLV. . . . .	109
6. Exodus, XXIII. . . . .	113
7. Saxon Chronicle . . . . .	117
8. Apollonius . . . . .	121
9. Boëthius, XVII., XXXIV. 10. . . . .	129

## CHAPTER IX.—VERSE EXTRACTS.

1. Narrative Verse . . . . .	135
2. Boëthius, Metre XII. . . . .	141
3. Cædmon, parts of Cant. II. and XVI. . . . .	145
4. Beowulf, parts of Cant. V., XXII., XXVII. . . . .	153

## APPENDIX.

1. Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning . . . . .	1
2. Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning . . . . .	167
3. Other words likely to be confounded by learners . . . . .	174
4. Additional Notes . . . . .	180

## ABBREVIATIONS &c.

---

**A. S.** Anglo-Saxon.

**Comp.** compare.

**D.** Dutch.

**F.** French.

**G.** German.

**Goth.** Gothic.

**Gr.** Greek.

**L.** Latin.

**lit.** literally.

**O.** old English in general

**P.** provincial.

**S.** Scottish, the ancient English dialect of the Lowlands of Scotland, and part of the north of England.

**Numbers**, applied to a noun, denote the declension and class; to a verb, the conjugation and class; to an adjective, the indefinite declension.

# GUIDE

## TO THE

### ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

##### SECT. I.—*The Alphabet, &c.*

The A. S. letters are 24, viz.

A	a	[Ǽ]	N	n
Æ	æ	[ǣ]	O	o
B	b		P	p
C	c	[c]	R	r [ʀ]
D	d	[d]	S	s [ʃ]
E	e	[e]	T	t [t]
F	f	[f]	U	u
G	g	[g ȝ]	W	w [ʍ ƿ ƿ]
H	h	[h ȝ]	X	x
I	i		Y	y
L	l		þ	þ
M	m	[m]	ð	ð

The characters between brackets were written by the Anglo-Saxons, but being for the most part mere corruptions of the Roman forms are now seldom printed.

In later times *k* was used for *c*; *v* and *z* occur in foreign names only. The abbreviations *ȝ* for *and*, *þ* for *pæt*, *the*, *that*, and others were in use; in general — shows that *m* or *n* is left out.

## II.—Accent.

The accent (') over a vowel shows it to be long. The A. S. accented vowels are mostly long by nature; as, *lār lore* (G. *lehre*), *bær bier* (G. *bahre*), *grén green* (G. *grün*), *wíd wide* (G. *weit*), *gód good* (G. *gut*), *rúm room, space* (G. *raum*), *fýr fire* (G. *feuer*). Some have become long by contraction, *g*, *h*, *ng*, or *n*, being left out; as, *smeagan*, *smeán to consider*, *sleahan*, *sleán to slay*, *gangan*, *gán to go*, *fangan*, *fón to take*: in *fíf five*, *tóð tooth*, *múð mouth*, and the like, the kindred tongues show the omitted *n*; as, *πεντε*, L. *quinque*, G. *fünf*; *ὀδους*, *ὀδουτ-ος*, L. *dens*, (') G. *zahn*; G. *mund*: a few from the omission of a vowel; as, *tae*, *tá toe*. From the examples above and below, it will be seen that in English a long or double vowel, and in German a long or double vowel, or diphthong, commonly answers to an A. S. long or accented vowel, while short vowels in general correspond in like manner. The accent serves at the same time, though never used for that purpose merely, to distinguish many words of like spelling but different meaning and sound; as, *ac but*, *ác oak*; *mæst mast*, *mæst most*; *wende turned*, *went*, *wénde weened*; *is is*, *ís ice*; *for for*, *fór journey*; *ful full*,

(') In A. S. as in Greek, *ns* does not occur in the same syllable.

*foul* ; *hyrde herd, keeper, hýrde heard.*<sup>(1)</sup> With-  
due attention therefore to the accent, A. S. cannot  
rightly written, pronounced, nor understood.<sup>(2)</sup>

### III.—Pronunciation.

The pronunciation is as follows:—

*a* has the sound of our *a* in *ah* ; F. &c. short *a*.

*á* is longer and broader, like G. &c. long *a*, approach-  
ing our *au* and *aw*.

*au* and *aw* sound nearly like *ow* in *now*, but more  
open, like G. and Italian *au*.

*æ* is pronounced like *a* in *glad*.

*é* nearly as *a* in *dare* ; G. *eh* ; F. close *é*.

*e* sounds like *e* in *send*, *rather*, when thus placed ;  
before a consonant followed by a vowel it resembles the  
in *bear*, but is shorter, like F. open *è*. Before a *o* or *o*  
it sounds as *y* ; at the end of a syllable it is very lightly  
ended, like the F. unaccented *e*, or the G. *e* final.

*é* is pronounced like *æ*.

*i* and *y* answer to *i* in *dim*.

*i* before another vowel to *y*.

*í* and *ý* to *ee* in *deem*.

*o* to short *o* in *not* ; F. open *o*.

*ó* to long *o* in *note* ; F. close *ó*.

*ow* is sounded as *ow* in *now*.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *mast, meist; wandte, wáhnte; ist, eis; für, fuhr; voll, faul; hirt, hörte*.

(<sup>2</sup>) The more advanced student will find comparison with the Gothic and other ancient dialects the only sure guide to the A. S. quantity.

u as *u* in *full*.

ú as *oo* in *fool*.

The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:—

c is always hard like *k*; *cw* stands for *qu*, which was however used in later times.

f between two vowels, or at the end of a syllable, sounds like *v*.

g is never soft; when placed however between two of the vowels æ, e, i, or y, or at the beginning of a syllable before e or i, followed by another vowel, it has the sound of *y*.<sup>(1)</sup>

cg is usually written for *gg*.

h is always strongly aspirated; at the end of a syllable or before a hard consonant it is guttural, like the G. *ch*, the S. *ch* in *loch*, and the Irish *gh* in *lough*.

hw answers to our *wh*; h occurs also before *l*, *n* and *r*.

w sometimes, as in E., stands before *r*; likewise before *l*.

þ (*tha*) is our hard *th*, as in *thing*.

ð (*eth*) our soft *th*, as in *other*.

þ usually begins, ð ends a syllable, but they were and are often confounded.

#### IV.—Spelling.

The A. S. spelling was very variable; the following are the commonest changes:—

<sup>1</sup> It is likely that *g* before *e* or *i*, and (like *h*) at the end of a syllable, was guttural, as it often is in German, and always in Dutch.

- á — æ and æ — á; þám, þæm; þære, þære.  
 a — ea; waldan, wealdan *to wield, rule*.  
 a — o and o — a; man, mon<sup>(2)</sup> *man*; on, an *on*.  
 ea — e and e — a; ceaster, cester<sup>(3)</sup> *town*; fela,  
 feala *many*; eá — é; teáh, téh *drew*.  
 i — y, eo; hit, hyt *it*: him, heom *them*.  
 í — ý, íe, eó; hí, hý, hie, heó *they*.  
 eo — u, y, e; sweord, swurd *sword*; seolf, sylf,  
 self *self*.  
 eó — ú, ý; sweótol, swútol, swýtol *manifest*.  
 g — h; sorg, sorh *care, sorrow*.  
 ng, nc, nge; sang, sanc, sange *song*: n and g  
 are often transposed, &c.; þegen, þegn, þeng, þen  
*servant, thane*: g is sometimes added or cast off at the  
 end of a word; as, hwý, hwýg *why?* hefig, hefi  
*heavy*: it is often left out before d or ð; mægden,  
 mæden *maiden*, mægð, mæð *tribe*.  
 cs, sc, hs, x; ácsian, áscian, áhsian, áxian *to*  
*ask (ax).*<sup>(4)</sup>

#### V.—Change of Letters.

Other changes of letters take place in inflection and derivation; the German synonyms often undergo the like, the English sometimes.

a is changed into æ, and *vice versá*; grafan *to grave*, (G. graben); þú græfst *thou gravest*, (G. du gräbst);

(<sup>1</sup>) P. *mon* for *man*, *lang* for *long*, and the like.

(<sup>2</sup>) L. *castra*; hence *Chester*, *-cester*, &c. in local names.

(<sup>4</sup>) See also nouns II. 2., and irregular comparison.



bæd *bath*, (G. bad); baðu *baths* (G. bäder.)<sup>(1)</sup>

a into e; man, *man* (G. mann); men<sup>(2)</sup> *men* (G. männer).

á into æ; hál *hale, whole*, ge-hælan *to heal*.

ea into e or y; neah *nigh*, nehst nyhst *nighest, next*.

e, o, eo, u into i or y; ren *rain*, rinan *to rain*; storm *storm* (G. sturm); styrman *to storm* (G. stürmen); weorc *work* (G. werk), wyrcan *to work* (G. wirken); hunger *hunger*, hyngrian *to hunger*.

eá, eó, ú, into ý; leás *loose*, (G. los); a-lýsan *to re-lease* (G. er-lösen); neód *need* (G. noth); nýdan *to force* (G. nöthigen); scrúd *shroud*, scrýdan *to shroud*.

ó into é; dóm *doom*, déman *to deem, doom*.

bb into f; a-hebban *to exalt*, a-hafen *exalted*<sup>(3)</sup>.

c and cc into h; sécan *to seek*, ic sóhte *I sought*; feccan *to fetch*, (ge-)freht *fretcht*<sup>(4)</sup>.

g into h and *vice versa*; wrígan *to cover*, ic wráh *I covered*; beorh *mountain*, plur. beorgas<sup>(5)</sup>.

s into r<sup>(7)</sup>; freósan *to freeze*, (ge-)frozen *frozen*.

ð into d<sup>(8)</sup>; sniðan *to cut* (G. schneiden), sniden *cut* (G. ge-schnitten).

Several other changes take place in the formation of imperfects I. 3. and complex; likewise in nouns II. 2., III. 1. 3. and in adjectives.

(<sup>1</sup>) See Verbs II. 3., and Nouns III. 1.

(<sup>2</sup>) See Nouns III. 2.

(<sup>3</sup>) See irregular comparison.

(<sup>4</sup>) See Verbs II. 3.

(<sup>5</sup>) See Verbs I. 2, 3.

(<sup>6</sup>) See Verbs III. 1, 2. Nouns II. 2.

(<sup>7</sup>) See Verbs III. 3.

(<sup>8</sup>) See Verbs II. 1, and III. 2.

VI.—*Correspondence of Letters.*

Attention to the correspondence of A. S. with English and German letters helps not only to recognise words already known in a kindred tongue, but to settle their pronunciation, spelling, and quantity. Thus—

á answers to E. long o; G. ei, l. e; bân<sup>(9)</sup> *bone*, G. bein; máre<sup>(10)</sup> *more, greater*, G. mehr.

to E. l. e; G. l. o, a, au: streám *stream*, G. strem; sceáp *sheep*, G. schaf; ge-leáfa *be-lief*, G. gabe.

ea to E. short a, l. o; G. s. a: scearp *sharp*, G. scharf; ceald *cold*, G. kalt.

æ to E. and G. a, e: gæst *guest*, G. gast; fæst *fast*, G. fest.

é to E. l. e, a, o; G. l. a, ei: sáð *seed*, G. saat; hær *hair*, G. haar; mæst<sup>(11)</sup> *most*, G. meist.

é to E. l. e; G. l. ü, ä: céne *bold, keen*, G. kühn; wénan *to ween, imagine*, G. wännen.

í to E. l. i; G. ei: síde *side*, G. seite.

eo to E. a, o, u, e; G. e, ie: deorc *dark*, sweord *sword*, G. schwert; ceorl *churl*, G. kerl; feoll *fell*, G. fiel.

ó to E. oo; G. l. u: flór *floor*, G. flur.

eó, eów to E. l. e; G. l. ie, eu: deóp *deep*, G. tief; deor *dear*, G. theuer; cneów *knee*, G. knie.

ú to E. ou, ow, oo; G. l. au, u: mús *mouse*, G. maus; cú *cow*, G. kuh; rúm *room, space*, G. raum.

(<sup>9</sup>) S. bane.

(<sup>10</sup>) S. mair.

(<sup>11</sup>) S. meist.

ý to E. l i, e; G. l. eu, an, ö: fýr *fire*, G. feuer;  
brýd *bride*, G. braut; hýran *to hear*, G. hören.

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. cn, k: cyle *chill*,  
G. kühle; stician *to stick*, G. stechen.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G.  
strecken; liccian *to lick*, G. lecken.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. schild; disc  
*dish*, *table*, G. tisch; tusc *tush*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear  
*year*, G. jahr; girstan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. frost:  
bridd (*young*) *bird*; flacse *flask*, G. flasche.

## CHAPTER II.

### I.—Nouns. Gender.

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter:     { wíf     G. weib *woman, wife*.  
              { cild     G. kind *child*.

Masculine: mona   G. mond *moon*.

Feminine: sunne   G. sonne *sun*.

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár       G. ähre     (f.) *ear of corn*.

— fæsten     G. feste     (f.) *fastness*.

— fyðer     G. feder     (f.) *feather, wing*

	ód	G. muth	(m.) <i>mind, mood.</i>
—	twig	G. zweig	(m.) <i>twig.</i>
—	wæpen	G. waffe	(f.) <i>weapon.</i>
—	wésten	G. wüste	(f.) <i>waste, desert.</i>
—	wín <sup>(1)</sup>	G. wein	(m.) <i>wine.</i>
sc.	cræft	G. kraft	(f.) <i>power, craft, art.</i>
—	ende	G. ende	(n.) <i>end.</i>
—	feld	G. feld	(n.) <i>field.</i>
—	here	G. heer	(n.) <i>army.</i>
—	lust	G. lust	(f.) <i>lust, pleasure.</i>
—	mere <sup>(2)</sup>	G. meer	(n.) <i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem.	bóc	G. buch	(n.) <i>book.</i>
—	hælu <sup>(3)</sup>	G. heil	(m.) <i>health, salvation.</i>
—	heorte <sup>(4)</sup>	G. herz	(n.) <i>heart.</i>
—	ge-sýhð	G. ge-sicht	(n.) <i>sight.</i>
—	turf	G. torf	(n.) <i>turf.</i>
—	wiht	G. wicht	(m.) <i>wight, being.</i>

reover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and pe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flód<sup>(5)</sup> *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sæ *sea* (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

<sup>(1)</sup> Οἶν-ος masc. L. vin-um, neut.

<sup>(2)</sup> L. mare, neut.

<sup>(3)</sup> L. sal-us, fem.

<sup>(4)</sup> Καρδ-ια fem. L. cor, neut.

<sup>(5)</sup> G. *fluth* fem.; *see* masc. and fem.; *band* neut. and masc.

## FURTHER RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Nouns ending in -*tl*, -*ed*, -*inle*, and diminutives in -*en*; likewise all having the nominative and accusative alike in both numbers are neuter.

II. Nouns in -*a*, -*m*, -*ls*, -*ad*, -*od*, -*e* (from verbs) and -*ling*; likewise all forming the genitive singular in -*a*, or the nominative plural in -*as* are masculine.

III. Nouns in -*æd*, -*ud*, -*d* (after a consonant) -*eo*, -*u* (of quality from adjectives) -*e* (from adjectives) -*ung*, and -*leást* are feminine.

IV. The gender of compound words depends on that of the last part; thus *wíf-man* *woman* is masculine.<sup>(1)</sup>

## II.—Declension.

Nouns are divided into two Orders, the Simple and the Complex;<sup>(2)</sup> the former having one Declension of three Classes for the three Genders, the latter two Declensions of three Classes each<sup>(3)</sup>.

The Simple Order, answering to the Greek and Latin pure nouns, contains those ending in an essential vowel; viz. -*e* in the neuter, -*a* in the masculine, and -*e* in the feminine. The Complex Order, answering to the Gr. and L. impure nouns, comprises all ending in a consonant, together with some in an unessential -*e* or -*u*.

(1) By the same rule G. *frauen-zimmer* *female* is neut.; *manns-person* *man* fem.

(2) In Grimm's system Simple Nouns are called weak; Complex, strong.

(3) For the grounds of this division, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 26—30.

*Table of the Inflection of Nouns.*

**SIMPLE ORDER.**

**DECLENSION I.**

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	-o	-a	-o
Accus. (*)	-o	-an	-an
Abl. & Dat.	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	-an	-an	-an
	PLURAL.		
Nom. & Acc.	-an		
Abl. & Dat.	-um		
Gen.	-ena		

**COMPLEX ORDER.**

**DECLENSION II.**

**DECLENSION III.**

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	—	— (-e)	—	— (-o)	-u	-u
Accus.	—	— (-e)	-o	— (-o)	-u	-e
A. & D.	-o	-e	-e	-e	-a	-e
Gen.	-es	-es	-e	-es	-a	-e
	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N. & A.	—	-as	-a	-u	-a	-a
A. & D.	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um
Gen.	-a	-a	-a(-ena)	-a	-a	-a(-ena)

(\*) On this arrangement see Rask, Preface p. 54.

## RULES FOR DECLENSION.

I. All Nouns have the nominative and accusative alike in the plural.

II. All Nouns form the ablative and dative plural in -um, often changed to -on, and sometimes again to -an.

III. The ablative and dative are always alike in each number.

IV. Neuters, as in Greek, Latin, and German, have the nominative and accusative alike in each number.

V. Feminines vary the nominative and accusative singular; but form the ablative, dative, and genitive singular alike.

VI. The Simple Order forms its genitive plural in -ena, the Complex in -a. <sup>(1)</sup>

III.—*Simple Order, or Declension I.*

The First Declension contains a few neuters ending in -e, all masculines in -a, and all feminines in -e; the nominative plural is formed in -an<sup>(2)</sup>. The three Classes are so much alike that they may be shown at one view.

<sup>(1)</sup> Participial nouns form it in -ra (see II. 2.) like indefinite adjectives. Complex feminines (II. 3. and III. 3.) sometimes have a Simple gen. plural.

<sup>(2)</sup> G. nouns forming their plur. in -en (-n) are Simple, all others Complex.

Examples—*eáge eye, steorra star, tunge tongue.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		SINGULAR.	
	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	eág-e	steorr-a	tung-e
Accus.	eág-e	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Gen.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
		PLURAL.	
N. & Acc.	eág-an	steorr-an	tung-an
Abl. & Dat.	eág-um	steorr-um	tung-um
Gen.	eág-ena	steorr-ena	tung-ena.

In like manner are declined *eáre ear, clíwe clew; hearra lord, guma man, wyrhta wright, workman, tíma time, draca dragon, hlísa fame; hlæfdige lady, cirice (circe) church, wuce week, eorðe earth, wise wise, way<sup>(2)</sup> &c.* Also some contracted nouns; as, *freá lord* (masc.) *tá toe, beó<sup>(3)</sup> bee* (fem.), making *freán &c.* plural *tán, táum, taena; beón, beóna &c.* *Æ' law, sá sea<sup>(4)</sup>, and eá river* (likewise fem.) are indeclinable, except sometimes gen. *eás<sup>(5)</sup>, nom. plural eán.*

(<sup>1</sup>) *Manna man and beofone heaven* are much less common than *man* III. 2. and *heofon* II. 2.

(<sup>2</sup>) *G. zehe, biene*, not contracted.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Sé* is also declinable, as II. 2.

(<sup>4</sup>) All A. S. nouns originally formed the genitive in *-s*; see p. 70, n. 4.



## IV.—Complex Order. Declension II.

## CLASS I.

The Second Declension, first Class, contains many neuters ending in one or more consonants.

Examples—*leáf leaf, word word.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-e	word-e
Gen.	leáf-es	word-es

## PLURAL.

Nom. & Acc.	leáf	word
Abl. & Dat.	leáf-um	word-um
Gen.	leáf-a	word-a.

Thus are declined *eár ear of corn, hús house, deór* <sup>(1)</sup> *beast, ge-hát promise, hors horsé, spel story, spell, wíf woman, wife, bearn child, bairn, lamb lamb &c.; feoh* <sup>(2)</sup> *fee, money, cattle makes feo, feos.*

## V.—CLASS II.

The Second Declension, second Class, comprises all regular masculines ending in a consonant, all complex ones in -e, and a few in -u (-o); the plural is formed in -as; some monosyllables change æ to a in the plural.

(1) Hence *deer*—"Rats and mice, and such small *deer*."

(2) Comp. L. *pec-us, pec-unia*; our *fee* is money only, G. *vieh cattle* only.

Examples—*dæl part, deal, ende end, dæg day.*

SINGULAR.

N. & A. <i>dæl</i>	end-e	<i>dæg</i>
A. & D. <i>dæl-e</i>	end-e	<i>dæg</i>
Gen. <i>dæl-es</i>	end-es	<i>dæg-es</i>

PLURAL.

N. & A. <i>dæl-as</i>	end-as	<i>dag-as</i>
A. & D. <i>dæl-um</i>	end-um	<i>dag-um</i>
Gen. <i>dæl-a</i>	end-a	<i>dag-a</i>

Thus also *cyning (cing) king, smið smith, stán stone, weg way, freo-dóm freedom, munuc-hád monkhood; mete meat, rædere reader, weordscipe worship; stæf<sup>(\*)</sup> staff, letter, mæg kinsman, &c.* Participial nouns in -end usually have the nominative and accusative sing. and plur. alike, and make -ra in the gen. plural. *Freónd friend, and feónd foe, fiend* have plur. *frýnd, fýnd, freónd, feónd, or freóndas &c.* Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en (-on), and -er (-or) are contracted in the oblique cases and plural; thus *engel angel, dryhten lord, ealdor prince*, make *engle, engles, englas &c. dryhtne &c.* *Heofen (-on) heaven* has abl. and dat. *heofene, heofone, or heofne* and so on. *Monað (mond) month* forms *monde &c.* *Winter* has abl. and dat. *wintra*, nom. pl. *wintras*, or *winter*. *Feld field, ford ford*, and *sumer (-or) summer* make abl. and dat. *felda, forda, sumera.*

(\*) Comp. G. *stab, stäbe*; &c. G. *buch-stab* is *letter*.

Fæder *father* is seldom varied in the singular, and never contracted. Nouns in -h, and -u (-o), change them to g and w; as, beáh *ring*, beáge, beáges &c.; bealu *bale*, *injury*, bealwe, and the like: a few drop the -h; as, feorh *life*, feore &c. Those in -sc often take x (cs) in the plural; as, fisc *fish*, fixas &c.; sometimes throughout; fix, fixe &c.

### VI.—CLASS III.

The Second Declension, third Class, contains all regular feminines ending in a consonant; the plural is formed in -a.

Examples—stefen (stefn) *voice*, spræc *speech*.

#### SINGULAR.

Nom.	stefen	spræc
Acc.	stefn-e	spræc-e
A. & D.	stefn-e	spræc-e
Gen.	stefn-e	spræc-e

#### PLURAL.

N. & A.	stefn-a	spræc-a
A. & D.	stefn-um	spræc-um
Gen.	stefn-a(-ena)	spræc-a(-ena).

Thus are declined sáwel *soul*, wylen *female slave*, frófer *comfort*, ge-samnung *assembly*, écnys *eternity*, lág *law*, stów *place*, peód *people*, lár *lore*, myrð *mirth*, bén *prayer*; &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en, -er (-or), are contracted in the oblique cases, and often in all; as, sáwl, wylu, frófr. A single final consonant after a

short vowel is doubled; as syn *sin*, accus. &c. *synne*. The gen. plur. is sometimes in -*ena*. Nouns in -*ung* sometimes form the abl. and dat. in -*a*. Hand *hand*, makes accus. *hand*, abl. and dat. *handa*. Miht *might*, tíd *time*, *tide*, woruld *world*, have the accus. like the nom.; woruld sometimes makes gen. *worldes*.<sup>(1)</sup> Niht *night*, and wiht *wight* remain unchanged in the accus. singular, and nom. plural.

---

VII.—Declension III.

CLASS I.

The Third Declension, first Class, contains all complex neuters in -*e*, all in -*u*, all neuter dissyllables in *er* (-*or*), *-el* (-*ol*), and -*en*, some in *ed* (-*od*), and many monosyllables in a consonant. The plural is in -*u* (-*o*), often changed to -*a*; some monosyllables change *æ*, and a few *ea*, into *a* in the plural.

Examples—*treów tree*, *rice realm*, *fæt vat*, *vessel*.

SINGULAR.		
N. & A. <i>treów</i>	<i>ric-e</i>	<i>fæt</i>
A. & D. <i>treów-e</i>	<i>ric-e</i> —	<i>fæt-e</i>
Gen. <i>treów-es</i>	<i>ric-es</i>	<i>fæt-es</i>
PLURAL.		
N. & A. <i>treów-u</i>	<i>ric-u</i>	<i>fat-u</i>
A. & D. <i>treów-um</i>	<i>ric-um</i>	<i>fat-um</i>
Gen. <i>treów-a</i>	<i>ric-a</i>	<i>fat-a</i> .

(<sup>1</sup>) See page 13, n. 5 above.

So likewise *scip ship*, *lim limb*, *deófol*<sup>(1)</sup> *devil*,  
*wæter water*, *ge-writ writing*, *writ* ; *wíte punishment*,  
*g e-mære boundary*, *spere spear*, *melu meal*, *flour* ;  
*b æð bath*, *glæs*<sup>(2)</sup> *glass*, *geat gate*, &c.

Dissyllables are mostly contracted ; thus, *heáfod head*, *tácen token*, *wunder wonder*, *make heáfde*, *heáfdes* &c. *tácne*, *wundre* &c. ; *nýten beast*, *neat*, *weofod altar*, &c. are usually not. Those in *-en* sometimes double the *n* in the oblique cases ; as, *wésten desert*, *wéstenne* &c. *Cild child*, *cealf calf*, and *æg egg*, form their plural *cildru* (*-a*)<sup>(3)</sup>, *cealfu*, *ægry* ; the first however often has *cild* or *cilde*. *þýstru darkness*, *lendenu loins*, &c. have no singular. Nouns in *-u* take *w*, and are usually contracted, forming the plural in *-a* ; as, *searu array*, *ambush*, *searwe*, *searwes* ; plur. *searwa* &c.

## VIII.—CLASS II.

The Third Declension, second Class, comprises masculines in *-u* (*-o*), forming their plural in *-a*, some irregulars (masc. and fem.) in *-er* (*-or*), changing their vowel in the ablative and dative, and making *-u* (*-o*, *-a*) in the plural, a few (masc.) changing their vowel as above, and in the nominative and accusative plural, &c.

(1) *De ó fol* is often masculine.

(2) Comp. G. *fass*, *fässer* ; *glas*, *gläser*.

(3) Hence *childr-en*, P. *child-er* ; comp. G. *kind*, *kind-er* ; *kalb*, *kälb-er* ; *ei*, *ei-er* : D. *kind*, *kind-er-en* ; *kalf*, *kalv-er-en* ; *ei*, *eij-er-en*.

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

SINGULAR.

N. & A.	sun-u	bróðer	man
A. & D.	sun-a	bréðer	men
Gen.	sun-a	bróðer	mann-e

PLURAL.

N. & A.	sun-a	bróðr-u	men
A. & D.	sun-um	bróðr-um	mann-um
Gen.	sun-a	bróðr-u	mann-a.

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo mead, metheglin; móðer mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister: fót foot, and tóð tooth, follow man*<sup>o</sup> making *fét, téð.* (\*) *Sun-ena* is rare.

*Leóde* (G. *leute*) *people, Dene Danes, Engle Angles, Englishmen*, and a few more in *-e* with no singular, make *leóðum, leóða, &c.*

IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in *-u* or *-o*, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in *-ena*.

Examples—*denu vale, bóc book, burh burgh, town.*

SINGULAR.

Nom.	den-u	}	bóc	burh
Acc.	den-e			
A. & D.	den-e		béc	byrig
Gen.	den-e		béc	burg-e

(\*) Comp. G. *mann, männer; fuss, füsse; zahu, zähne.*

	PLURAL.	
N. & A. den-a	béc	byrig
A. & D. den-um	bóc-um	burg-um
Gen. den-a (-ena)	bóc-a	burg-a.

Like *denu* are declined *lufu love*, *gifu gift*, *grace*, *snóru daughter-in-law*, *caru care*, *lagu water*, &c. *Mænigeo* (-u) *many*, *multitude*, *yldo age*, *eld*, *brædo breadth*, and some others in -o are indeclinable, except abl. and dat. plur. *mænigum*. *Duru door* makes abl. and dat. sing. *dura*. Collectives in -waru, as *burh-waru town's-folk*, form plur. -ware, gen. -wara or -warena. *Mús mouse*, *lús louse*, *cú cow*, *gós goose*, *bróc breeches*, follow *bóc*, making plur. *mýs mice*, *lýs lice*, *cý hye*, *gés*<sup>(1)</sup> *geese*, *bréc*. *Cú* sometimes has gen. sing. *cús*,<sup>(2)</sup> gen. plur. *cúna*. *Turf turf*, and *furh furrow*, follow *burh*, making *tyrf*, &c.

## CHAPTER III.

### I.—Adjectives

As in German &c. have a Definite and an Indefinite inflection: the former is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, by any other demonstrative, or by a possessive pronoun; the latter always else. There are three Declensions, one for the Definite form, agreeing closely with the Simple Order, two for the In-

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *buch*, *bücher*; *maus*, *mäuse*; *laus*, *läuse*; *kub*, *kübe*; *gans*, *gänse*.

(<sup>2</sup>) See page 70, n. 4.

definite, answering, though not so exactly, to the Complex Order of Nouns.

## II.—Definite Declension.

Example—(*gód good*) þæt gód-*e*<sup>(\*)</sup> &c. *the good*.

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. þæt gód- <i>e</i>	se gód- <i>a</i>	seó gód- <i>e</i>
Acc. þæt gód- <i>e</i>	þone gód- <i>an</i>	þá gód- <i>an</i>
Abl. þý gód- <i>an</i>		þý gód- <i>an</i>
Dat. þám gód- <i>an</i>		þære gód- <i>an</i>
Gen. þæs gód- <i>an</i>		þære gód- <i>an</i>
PLURAL.		
N. & A. þa gód- <i>an</i>		
A. & D. þám gód- <i>um</i>		
Gen. þára gód- <i>ena</i> .		

This declension is used for all adjectives, participles, and pronouns in general; participles present however take -*ra* instead of -*ena* in the genitive plural. Monosyllables commonly change *æ* to *a* throughout; as, *smæl small*, þæt *smale*, se *smala*, seó *smale the small*, and so on. Adjectives in -*h*, as *heáh high*, usually change it to *g* when the case-ending is a vowel, as, þæt *heág-e*, &c.; otherwise the *h* is dropt; as, abl. &c. *heán*. Those in -*u* (-*o*), as *near-u narrow*, take *w* throughout; as, þæt *near-we*, &c.<sup>(\*)</sup>

(\*) Comp. Nouns I. 1, 2, 3.

(\*) Comp. Nouns II. 2, 3. III. 1.



## III.—Indefinite Declension I.

Example—gód<sup>(1)</sup> *good*.

SINGULAR.		
	Neut.	Masc. Fem.
Nom.	gód	gód
Acc.	gód	gód-ne
Abl.	gód-e	gód-e
Dat.	gód-um	gód-re
Gen.	gód-es	gód-re
PLURAL.		
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A.	gód(-u)	gód-e
A. & D.	gód-um	
Gen.	gód-ra.	

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-ol), -isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, *wyrð-e worth, worthy, dýg-el dark, sprec-ol talkative, menn-isc human, ge-wís sure, sóð true, sooth, leóht light, heard hard, seóc sick, wrec wretched, fæst fast, &c.*

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection is added; *wyrð-ne, wyrð-um, wyrð-re, &c.*

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. *heá-nne, nearo-ne*; abl. &c. fem. *heá-re, near-we or near-e*; gen. plur. *heá-ra, near-wa or near-a.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.

## IV.—Indefinite Declension II.

Example—smæl<sup>(\*)</sup> *small*

SINGULAR.		
	Neut.	Masc. Fem.
Nom.	smæl	smæl smal-u
Acc.	smæl	smæl-ne smal-e
	Abl. smal-e	smale
	Dat. smal-um	smæl-re
	Gen. smal-es	smæl-re

PLURAL.		
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A.	smal-u	smal-e
A. & D.	smal-um	
Gen.	smæl-ra.	

Thus are declined monosyllables with æ (except fæst) &c., most adjectives with derived endings, and participles past of the Complex Order; some of both the latter, however, follow Declension I. As, læt *late, slow*, swær *heavy*, glæd *glad*, bær *bare*, swæ's *sweet, dear*, til *good*, eád-ig *blessed, prosperous*, fær-lic *sudden, dangerous*, ge-sib-sum *peaceable*, mæg-er *meagre*, hlutt-or *clear*, fæg-en *glad, fain*. Some dissyllables are contracted in certain forms, as, hál-ig *holy*, hál-ge, hál-ges, &c., but gen. plur. hál-igra and the like.

(\*) Comp. Nouns III. 1, 3.

V.—*Comparison.*

The Comparative and Superlative Degrees are regularly formed by adding -or and -ost<sup>(1)</sup>, (E. and G. -er and -est), to the indefinite form; as, leóf, leóf-or, leóf-ost *dear*, *dear-er*, *dear-est* (G. lieb, lieb-er, lieb-est): æ usually becomes a; as, smæl, smal-or, smal-ost, *small*, *small-er*, *small-est*. (G. schmal, schmal-er, schmal-est.) The ending -or is however only adverbial; as an adjective the Comparative is formed in -re, -ra, -re, whether used definitely or indefinitely; as, (pæt) leóf-re, (se) leóf-ra, (seó) leóf-re (*the*) *dearer*; (G. das &c. lieb-re) (pæt) smæl-re &c. (*the*) *smaller*; (G. das &c. schmal-re). The Superlative has both the definite and indefinite inflections, the former in -ost, or -est, (also the adverbial form), the latter in -oste, -osta, -oste, or -este &c.; as, leóf-ost *dearest*, pæt leóf-oste, or leóf-este &c. *the dearest*; (G. das &c. lieb-ste.)

## TABLE OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
	Adjective.	
heard	{ (pæt) heard-re (the) hard-er	heard-ost
hard		hard-est
pæt heard-e		pæt heard-oste
the hard		the hard-est
	Adverb.	
heard-e	heard-or	heard-ost
hard-ly	hard-li-er	hard-li-est.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. the L. comparative -ior; Gr. superlative -er-os, &c.

VI.—*Irregular Comparison.*

The following adjectives are irregularly compared; the change of a into e; æ into a; eá into ý, or é; ea, eo, u, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me (<sup>2</sup>) (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compared. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
lang <sup>(3)</sup>	lengre (leng)	lengest
<i>long</i>	<i>longer</i>	<i>longest</i>
strang	strengre (strangor)	strengest
<i>strong</i>	<i>stronger</i>	<i>strongest</i>
hræd (hraðe)	hrædre (hraðor)	hraðost
<i>quick, rath</i>	<i>quicker (rather)</i>	<i>quickest</i>
eald	yldre	yldest
<i>old</i>	<i>elder</i>	<i>eldest</i>
neah	nearre (near, nyr)	nyhst, nehst, next
<i>nigh</i>	<i>nigher</i>	<i>nighest, next</i>
heáh	hýrre	hýhst, héhst
<i>high</i>	<i>higher</i>	<i>highest</i>
eáð	eáðre (éðre, éð)	eáðost
<i>easy</i>	<i>easier</i>	<i>easiest</i>
feor	fyrre (fyr)	fyrrest
<i>far</i>	<i>further</i>	<i>furthest</i>
geong	gyngre	gyngest
<i>young</i>	<i>younger</i>	<i>youngest</i>

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. lang, länger, längst; alt, älter, ältest; nahe, näher, nächst; hoch, höher, höchst; jung, jünger, jüngst; fort, fürter; sanft, sanfter, sanftest; eher, erst; gut, wohl, besser, best; mehr, meist, &c.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>sceort</b>	<b>scyrtre</b>	<b>scyrtest</b>
<b>short</b>	<b>shorter</b>	<b>shortest</b>
<b>(ford, furd)</b>	<b>furdre (furdor)</b>	
<b>(forth)</b>	<b>further</b>	
<b>sóft</b>	<b>séftre (séft)</b>	<b>séftest</b>
<b>soft</b>	<b>softer</b>	<b>softest</b>
<b>ær (¹)</b>	<b>ærre (ærer, -or)</b>	<b>ærest (-ost)</b>
<b>early (ere)</b>	<b>earlier, sooner</b>	<b>(erst) first</b>
<b>gód (wel)</b>	<b>betere (bet)</b>	<b>betest, betst</b>
<b>good (well)</b>	<b>better</b>	<b>best</b>
<b>yfel</b>	<b>wyrse (wyr)</b>	<b>wyrrest, wyrst</b>
<b>evil</b>	<b>worse</b>	<b>worst</b>
<b>micel</b>	<b>máre (má) (²)</b>	<b>mæst</b>
<b>great, mickle</b>	<b>greater, more</b>	<b>greatest, most</b>
<b>lytel (lyt)</b>	<b>læsse (læs)</b>	<b>læst</b>
<b>little</b>	<b>less</b>	<b>least</b>
<b>forme (fore)</b>		<b>fyrrest, fyrst</b>
<b>former, fore</b>		<b>foremost, first</b>
<b>læt, læteme (late)</b>	<b>lætre (lator)</b>	<b>latost, lætemest</b>
<b>late, slow</b>	<b>later, latter</b>	<b>latest, last</b>
<b>síd, sídeme</b>	<b>sídre (sídor)</b>	<b>sídost, sídemest</b>
<b>late, (since)</b>		
<b>nordeme, (nord) (³)</b>	<b>(nordor)</b>	<b>nordemest</b>
<b>northern, north</b>		<b>northmost</b>
<b>úfeme (úp)</b>	<b>úfere (úfor)</b>	<b>ýfemest</b>
<b>high (up)</b>	<b>upper</b>	<b>upmost</b>
<b>æfteme (æfter)</b>	<b>æftre</b>	<b>æftemest</b>
<b>aft, after</b>	<b>after</b>	<b>aftmost</b>

(¹) Hence O. *er*; "or ever."(²) For *már*, to which we have returned: *more*; O. was *me*.(³) Some of these are often formed in *-weard*; as, *n rðe-weard* northern, north-ward; *úfe-weard* (úp-weard) upper, up-ward.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
hindeme	hindere	hindemest
<i>hind</i>	<i>hinder</i>	<i>hindmost</i>
inneme (inn)	innere (innor)	innemest
<i>inner (in)</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>inmost</i>
úteme (út)	útre (útor)	ýtemest
<i>outer (out)</i>	<i>outer, utter</i>	<i>outmost, utmost</i>
midd, midme		midmest
<i>mid</i>		<i>midmost</i>
nídeme (níder)	nídre (nídror)	nídemest
<i>low (down)</i>	<i>nether</i>	<i>nethmost.</i>

## CHAPTER IV.

## I.—Pronouns—Personal.

THE personal Pronouns are *ic I*, *pú thou*, *hit, he*, *heó it, he, she*. The two first are the only A. S. words with a dual number.

SINGULAR.			
N.	ic ( <sup>4</sup> )		pú ( <sup>5</sup> )
A.	me		þe
A.&D.	me		þe
G.	mín		þín
DUAL.		PLURAL.	
N.	wit ( <sup>6</sup> )	we	git
A.	unc	ús	inc
A.&D.	unc	ús	inc
G.	uncer	úre	incer
			eówer

(<sup>4</sup>) Comp. *ic-w, me, &c.* L. *eg-o, me*; G. *ich, mir, wir*, (D. *wij*) *uns, unser*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Comp. (Dor.) *rv, rs*; L. *tu, te*; G. *du, dir, euch, &c.* D. *gij, &c.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Remark a peculiar construction with the dual:—*wit Seilling we two, viz. I and Seilling*; *healf þæs cinges, healf uncer Brentinges, half the king's, half mine and Brenting's.*

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. hit (')	he	heó
A. hit	hine	hí
<hr/>		
A. & D. him		hire
G.	his	hire
<hr/>		
PLURAL.		
N. & A.	hí	
A. & D.	him	
G.	hira	

Meh, mec (L. mihi, G. mich) and þeh, þec (G. dich) sometimes occur for me and þe: likewise the poetical úsih, úsic, and eówih, eówic for ús and eów; and uncit and incit, for unc and inc.

There being, as in English, no reflective pronoun, the personals are used instead; as, ic me reste *I rest me* (*myself*); þa þeówas wyrmdon hig, *the servants were warming them* (*selves*). Sylf *self, same*, declined as an adjective both definitely and indefinitely (I.), and agreeing with the pronoun or noun, gives a strong reflective sense; as, ic sylf or sylfa *I myself*; fram me sylfum *of myself*; þú sylf *thou thyself*; we sylfe *we ourselves*, &c.; seó sylfe tíð *the same time*.<sup>(2)</sup> Sometimes the pronoun stands in the dative before sylf; as, (ic) me sylf *I myself*; him-sylf *he himself*.<sup>(3)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. ó, ū, óv, ol, al; L. id, is, ea, eum, ejus, ii; G. es, ihn, ihm, ihr; D. het, hij, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. ich selber, wir selben, die selbe zeit, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) Like F. *moi-même, lui-même*; hence seemingly *my-self, thy-self*, &c.: *self* is properly no more a noun than αὐτός, L. *ipse*, or F. *même*.

II.—*Possessives.*

The Possessive Pronouns are formed, as in German, from the genitives of the two first persons; as, *mín* (G. *mein*) *mine, my*; *þín* (G. *dein*) *thine, thy*; *úncr*, *úre* (G. *unser*) *our*; *íncr*, *eówer* (G. *euer*) *your*: like other Pronouns in general, they are declined as indefinite adjectives I. Those in *-er* are usually contracted; as *úncr*, *eówres*, and the like. *U're* forms *úrum*, *úres*, &c; but remains unchanged in the whole feminine singular. The poetical *úser* (*ússer*) for *úre* is thus declined:—

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
SINGULAR.		
N. <i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>
A. <i>úser</i>	<i>úserne</i>	<i>ússe</i>
A. & D. <i>ússum</i>		<i>ússe</i>
G.	<i>ússes</i>	<i>ússe</i>
PLURAL.		
N. & A. <i>ússe, úser</i>		
A. & D. <i>ússum</i>		
G. <i>ússa.</i>		

The genitive of the third person is used unchanged; his, *its*, *his*, hire *her*, hira *their*. —To make these reflective, the genitive of *sylf* agreeing with the pronoun, or the indefinite adjective *ágen* *own*, agreeing with the noun, must be used; as, *þín sylfes bearn thine own son*; *tó his ágenre þearfe to his own need*. *Sín* occurs in poetry as a possessive of the third person; not however like G. *sein*, for L. *ejus*, but for L. *suus* only.



III.—*Demonstratives.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are *þæt, se, seó that*, likewise the relative *which, who, that*, and the article *the*; <sup>(1)</sup> and *þis, þes, þeós this*.

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.		Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N.	þæt <sup>(2)</sup>	se	seó		þis <sup>(3)</sup>	þes	þeós
A.	þæt	þone	þá		þis	þisne	þás
Abl.	þý		þý		þise		þisse
D.	þám		þære		þisum		þisse
G.	þæs		þære		þises		þisse
	N. & A. þa					þás	
	A. & D. þám					þisum	
	G. þára					þissa	

*þæne, þæm, þære, þæra*, are sometimes used for *þone, þám, þære, þára*; likewise *þæs* for *þás*; the *s* in *þise*, &c. is often doubled; *þissere* and *þissera* occur also for *þisse* and *þissa*. The indeclinable *þe* is used for all cases of *þæt, se, seó*, as a relative; combined with it it forms *þæt-te* <sup>(4)</sup> *that which, se-þe he that, seó-þe she that*. *þæt, se, seó* is sometimes repeated in a sentence, standing first as a demonstrative, and next as a relative; but *þe* commonly stands as

<sup>(1)</sup> Comp. the threefold use of G. *das, der, die*.

<sup>(2)</sup> Comp. *re, ó, ð, rov, ra, roi, rat*; G. *das, den, dem, der, des, &c.* D. *dat, &c.* From *seó* comes *she* (G. *sie*); from *þa* *they*, *þæm* *them*, *þæra* *their*.

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. G. *dies, &c.*; *þás* and *þás* have become *those* and *these*.

<sup>(4)</sup> *Þætte* is also *that* (conjunction) G. *dass*.

relative in the second place; as, *þæt micle ge-teld þe Moises worhte, the great tent that Moses made.*

þe is sometimes used along with hit, &c. as a relative; as, *þe þurh hine through whom.*

Swá is sometimes used (like G. so) as an indeclinable relative.

Ylc *same*, follows the indefinite declension.

Swylc *such*, is often repeated, standing in the second place adverbially; as, *Ælc þing on-gitan swylc swylce hit is to understand each thing so as it is.*

---

#### IV.—Interrogatives.

The Interrogative Pronouns are *hwæt, hwá? what? who? hwylc? which? hwæder whether? which?* The first has no plural, and is thus declined:

Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.
Nom. hwæt	hwá
Acc. hwæt	hwone (hwæne)
Abl. hwý	
Dat. hwám (hwæm)	
Gen. hwæs ( <sup>5</sup> )	

It answers to L. *quis* not *qui*, and is never used as a relative: with a neuter adjective it governs the genitive; as, *hwæt yfeles? what evil?* it is also (like G. *et-was*, was) used not interrogatively, for *somewhat, a little*; as, *hwæt lytles some little.*

(<sup>5</sup>) From *hwám* and *hwæs*, are *whom* and *whose*.

## V.—Indefinites.

The Indefinite pronouns are *swá-hwæt(-swá)* *what-so-ever*, *swá-hwá (-swá)* *who-so-ever*, *swá-hwylc (-swá)* *which-so-ever*, *æg-hwæt (ge-hwæt)*, *æg-hwylc*, &c. *whatsoever*, &c. which follow the declension of the chief word in the compound. Others are *ælc*, *each*, *every one*, *eall* *all*, *énig* *any*, *nénig* *none whatever*, *án-lipig (én-lipig)* *single*, *alone*, &c. *Ge-noh* *enough* is sometimes indeclinable. *A'n* *one*, *a*, and *sum* *some*, *a*, *a certain*, serve for the indefinite article, which is however often not expressed : *sum* placed after a genitive cardinal number implies one above it ; as, *fíf-tyna* *sum* *one of sixteen*, *one with fifteen others*. *Manig (mænig)* *many* sometimes has nom. and accus. plur. *manega*. *Fela* *much*, *many* is indeclinable : *feáwa (feá)* *few*, sometimes has abl. and dat. plur. *feáwum*, gen. *feára* ; both often govern a genitive plural ; as, *mádma fela* *many treasures* ; *feá worda* *few words*. *Man (man)* is used (like G. *man*, and F. *on*) (') indefinitely for *one*, *they* ; as, *Me man sægde* *they told me* (G. *man sagte mir*). From *wiht (wuht)* *creature*, *being*, (*wight*, *whit*) are formed *á-wiht (á-wuht)* contracted to *áwht*, *úht* *anything*, *ought* ; and *nán-wiht (-wuht)* *náwht*, *náht* (') *nothing*, *nought*. Other indefinite Pronouns are *óðer (-or)* *other*, *second* (L. *alius*, and *alter* for *secundus*) ; *áwðer*, *áðer* *one of two* (L. *alter duorum*) ; *náwðer (náðor)*, *neither of two* (L. *neuter*), *éðer*

(') Formerly *hom*, from L. *homo*.

(\*) Hence *not*, like G. *nicht* from *ne-wicht*.

*either, each of two.* O'd e r forms its oblique cases fem. sing. ó d r e ; it sometimes follows indefinite Decl. II.

# VI.—Comparative Table of Cardinal Numbers.

GREEK.	LATIN.	DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
έν	un-um	een	án	one	ein
δυο	duo	twee	twá	two	zwei
τρια	tria	drie	preo	three	drei
κεττορε (³)	quatuor	vier	feower	four	vier
πεντε	quinque	vijf	fif	five	fünf
ἕξ	sex	zes	six	six	sechs
ἑπτα	septem	zeven	seofon	seven	sieben
ὀκτω	octo	acht	eahta	eight	acht
ἐννεα	novem	negen	nigon	nine	neun
δεκα	decem	tien	tyn	ten	zehn

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
elf	endlufon	eleven	eílf
twalf	twelf	twelve	zwölf
der-tien	preo-ttyne	thir-teen	drei-zehn
veertien	feower-tyne	fourteen	vierzehn
vijftien	fif-tyne	fifteen	funfzehn
zestien	six-tyne	sixteen	sechzehn
zeventien	seofon-tyne	seventeen	siebzehn
achtien	eahta-tyne	eighteen	achtzehn
negentien	nigon-tyne	nineteen	neunzehn
twin-tig	twen-tig	twen-ty	zwan-zig
dertig	pry-ttig	thirty	drei-ssig
veertig	feower-tig	forty	vierzig

(³) Æol. for *ρεσσαρα*.

Dutch.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
vijftig	fif-tig	fifty	funfzig
zestig	six-tig	sixty	sechzig
zeventig	hund-seofon-tig	seventy	siebzig
tachtig (')	hund-eahtatig	eighty	achtzig
negentig	hund-nigontig	ninety	neunzig
honderd	{ hund, hundred, } hund-teontig } hund-endlufontig 110 hund-twelftig 120	hundred	hundert
duizend	þúsend	thousand	tausend.

A'n, like all other pronouns, follows indef. Decl. I., sometimes making accus. masc. *ænne*; thus too *nán none*. Used definitely, *áne*, *ána*, *áne*, and standing after its noun, &c., it means *alone*. *Twá* (') and *preo* are thus declined:—

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.		Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & A.	twá (tú)	twegen (')	twá		preo	prý	preo
	A. & D.	twám (twæm)				prym	
	G.	twegra (twega)				preora.	

Bá, *begen*, *bá both*, follows *twá*; prefixed to *twá* it forms *bá-twá* (*bú-tú*) (') which is indeclinable. The numbers fewer to twelve inclusive, when used absolutely, have a nom. in -e, &c.; as, *ealle seofone all seven*; *án of þám twelfum one of the twelve*; *án*

(') The *t-* is probably a remnant of the prefix *h'o n d-* retained before the vowel.

(') S. *tsa*. G. *zwei*, *zwo*.

(') *Twain*. G. *zween*.

(') Hence *both*, G. *beide*; comp. Italian *ambe-due*.

*þissa fífa one of these five.* Those above *eahta* usually govern a genitive. Twentig and the others in -tig make abl. and dat. -tigum, gen. -tigra. Hund prefixed to the tens after *sixtig* (answering to -kovr-a, L. -gint-a) is sometimes dropt when hund *hundred* goes before; as, *scipa án hund* and *eahtatig, of ships one hundred and eighty.* Hund (*hundred*) follows II. 1; hundred and *þúsend*, III. 1.

Units are placed before tens, as, six and *fíftig, six and fifty.* In numbers above a hundred, the smaller stands last, and the noun is repeated; as, *Hund-teontig wintra* and *seofon and feowertig wintra, a hundred winters and seven and forty winters.*<sup>(5)</sup>

Wintre affixed to numbers forms adjectives denoting age; as, *fram twí-wintrum cilde, from the child of two years.*

---

#### VII.—Ordinal Numbers.

<i>þæt forme, se forma, seó forme</i>	<i>first</i>
<i>þæt, se, seó óðer</i>	<i>second</i>
<i>þæt þry-dde, se þry-dda, seó þry-dde</i> <sup>(6)</sup>	<i>thir-d</i>
<i>feor-pe, -pa, -pe</i>	<i>four-th</i>
<i>fíf-te, -ta, -te</i>	<i>fifth</i>
<i>six-te, — —</i>	<i>sixth</i>
<i>seof-pe, -pa, -pe</i>	<i>seventh</i>
<i>eahto-pe — —</i>	<i>eighth</i>
<i>nigo-pe</i>	<i>ninth</i>

<sup>(5)</sup> The northern nations reckoned time by winters.

<sup>(6)</sup> Comp. *rpt-tes*, L. *ter-tius*, G. *dri-tte*, *vier-te*, &c.

teóþe	<i>tenth</i>
endlyf-te	<i>eleventh</i>
twelfte	<i>twelfth</i>
þry-tteóðe	<i>thirteenth</i>
feower-teóðe	<i>fourteenth</i>
fif-teóðe	<i>fifteenth</i>
six-teóðe	<i>sixteenth</i>
seofon-teóðe	<i>seventeenth</i>
eahta-teóðe	<i>eighteenth</i>
nigon-teóðe	<i>nineteenth</i>
twentig-ode	<i>twentieth</i>
þryttigode	<i>thirtieth</i>
feowertigode	<i>fortieth</i>
fiftigode	<i>fiftieth</i>
sixtigode	<i>sixtieth</i>
hund-seofontigode	<i>seventieth</i>
hund-eahtatigode	<i>eightieth</i>
hund-nigontigode	<i>ninetieth</i>
hund-teontigode	<i>hundredth</i>
hund-endlufontigode	<i>110th</i>
hund-twelftigode	<i>120th</i>

Units combined with ordinal tens stand first when cardinals, last when ordinals; as, *án* and *þryttigode* *one and thirtieth*; *þý* *twentigodan dæge* and *þý* *feordan dæge* *Septembris, on the twenty and fourth day of September.*

Healf *half* placed after an ordinal number (like *G. halb*) reduces it by half; as, *óðer-healf* (lit. *second-half*) *one and a half*, (*G. andert-halb*); *þridde-healf*

(lit. *third-half*) *two and a half* (G. dritte-halb).<sup>(1)</sup> A'n, twá, þreo, form æn-e *once*, twi-wa (tu-wa) *twice*, þry-wa *thrice*; with the other cardinals, and all the ordinals, *síð a time* is used in the ablative for the same purpose; as, feower, fíf, &c. síðum or síðon *four, five, &c. times*; (þý) forman, óðre, þryddan, &c. *side the first, second, third, &c. time.*

## CHAPTER V.

### I.—Verbs. Conjugation.

THERE are two Orders of Verbs, as of Nouns; viz. the Simple and the Complex; <sup>(2)</sup> the former containing pure or open Verbs answering to the Greek in -αἰν, -εἰν, and -οἰν, and to the Latin in -are, -ēre, and -ire; the latter impure or close Verbs, answering to the Greek regulars, and to the Latin in -ēre, &c.<sup>(3)</sup> The Simple Order forms its imperfect by adding -ode (-ede), -de, or -te to the root; the participle past by adding -od (-ed), -d, or -t: in the Complex the imperfect becomes monosyllabic and changes its vowel; the participle past ends in -en.<sup>(4)</sup> The former is divided into three Classes forming one Conjugation; the latter into two Conjugations of three Classes each.

<sup>(1)</sup> Comp. ἡμιον-τερος, L. sesqui-alter, -tertius.

<sup>(2)</sup> Simple Verbs are by Grimm termed Weak, Complex Strong.

<sup>(3)</sup> See Rask's Grammar, pp. 67—70.

<sup>(4)</sup> E. and G. verbs in general follow the A.S., though complex forms have in each not seldom become simple.



## II.—Comparative View of the Chief Tenses.

## SIMPLE ORDER, OR CONJUGATION I.

Examples—*luf-ian to love*, G. *lieb-en*; *hýr-an to hear*, G. *hör-en*; *tell-an to tell, reckon*, G. *zähl-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	ic luf-ige	— luf-ode	(ge-)luf-od
	<i>I love</i>	— lov-ed	lov-ed
	G. ich lieb-e	— lieb-te	ge-lieb-t
Class II.	hýr-e	hýr-de	(ge-)hýr-ed
	<i>hear</i>	hear-d	hear-d
	G. hör-e	hör-te	ge-hör-t
Class III.	tell-e	teal-de	(ge-)teal-d
	<i>tell</i>	tol-d	tol-d
	G. zähl-e	zähl-te	ge-zähl-t.

## COMPLEX ORDER.—CONJUGATION II.

Examples—*brec-an to break*, G. *brech-en*; *heald-an to hold*, G. *halt-en*; *drag-an to draw, drag*, G. *trag-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	brec-e	bræc	(ge-)broc-en
	<i>break</i>	brake	brok-en
	G. brech-e	brach	ge-broch-en
Class II.	heald-e	heóld	(ge-)heald-en
	<i>hold</i>	held	hold-en
	G. halt-e	hielt	ge-halt-en
Class III.	drag-e	dróh	(ge-)drag-en
	<i>draw</i>	drew	draw-n
	G. trag-e	trug	ge-trag-en.

CONJUGATION III.

Examples—bind-an *to bind*, G. bind-en; dríf-an *to drive*, G. treib-en; clúf-an *to cleave*, G. klieb-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	bind-e	band	(ge-)bund-en
	<i>bind</i>	<i>bound</i>	<i>bound-en</i>
	G. bind-e	band	ge-bund-en
Class II.	dríf-e	dráf	(ge-)drif-en
	<i>drive</i>	<i>drove</i>	<i>driv-en</i>
	G. treib-e	trieb	ge-trieb-en
Class III.	clúf-e	cleáf	(ge-)clof-en
	<i>cleave</i>	<i>clave</i>	<i>clov-en</i>
	G. klieb-e	klob	ge-klob-en.

III.—Simple Order, or Conjugation I.

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
INDICATIVE MODE.			
Present.			
Sing.	ic luf-ige (¹)	hýr-e	tell-e
	pú luf-ast	hýr-st	tel-st
	he luf-að	hýr-ð	tel-ð
Plur. we, ge,	hí luf-iað	hýr-að	tell-að
	luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Imperfect.			
Sing.	ic luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
	pú luf-odest	hýr-dest	teal-dest
	he luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Pl. we, ge,	hí luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

(¹) Comp. *love*, *lov-est*, *lov-eth*; G. *lieb-e*, *lieb-est*, *lieb-et*, &c. I. *am-o*, *-as*, *-at*, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing. luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Plur. luf-ion	hýr-on	tell-on

## Imperfect.

Sing. luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Plur. luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. luf-a	hýr	tell-e
Plur. { luf-iað	{ hýr-að	{ tell-að
{ luf-ige	{ hýr-e	{ tell-e

## INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	luf-ian	hýr-an	tell-an
Gerund.	tó luf-igenne	—hýr-enne	—tell-anne
Part. pres.	luf-igende	hýr-ende	tell-ende
P. past (ge-)	luf-od	(ge-) hýr-ed	(ge-) teal-d.

The first form of the present indicative, and of the imperative plural, is used when the pronoun comes first, or is left out; as, *we lufiað we love, hýrað hear*; the second when the pronoun follows close; as, *telle ge tell ye?* The subjunctive plural sometimes ends in *-an* or *-en*; as, *lufian, hýrden*, and the like. The gerund, which is always preceded by *tó*, and seems to be a kind of dative of the infinitive, answers to our infinitive present, active and passive, and to the Latin supines, infinitive future, active and passive, &c.; as, *Come þú ús tó for-spillanne? camest thou to destroy us?* L. *nos perditum*. *Hwæðer is édre tó cwedanne? whether is easier to say?* L. *facilius dictu*. *Eart þú se-þe tó cumenne eart? art thou he that is (art) to come?*

L. qui venturus est. Heó býð tó lufigenne (¹) *she is (must be, or ought) to be loved*, L. amanda est. The infinitive of the first Class is often formed in -igan, sometimes in -igean, for -ian, and g is put in or left out in some other forms with little or no change of pronunciation. The Gerund of the third Class sometimes makes -enne for -anne. Ge- may be prefixed to any part of verbs in general, but is oftenest used with the imperfect, and especially with the participle past, though not, as in German, to be considered the sign of the latter.(²)

#### IV.—Class I.

Like lufian are conjugated:

Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.	
hatige	hatode	(ge-)hatod	<i>hate</i>
losige	losode	losod	<i>be lost</i>
clypige	clypode	clypod	<i>call, clepe</i>
fullige	fullode	fullod	<i>baptize</i>
fúlige	fúlode	fúlod	<i>rot</i>
cunnige	cunnode	cunnod	<i>try</i>
wacige(³)	wacode	wacod	<i>watch</i>
hangige(⁴)	hangode	hangod	<i>hang</i>
hýrige	hýrode	hýrod	<i>hire</i>
hergige	hergode	hergod	<i>harry</i>
macige	macode	macod	<i>make</i>
bletsige	bletsode	bletsod	<i>bless.</i>

(¹) Hence the phrases "house to let," "he is to blame," &c.

(²) Ge- is seldom used before another prefix.

(³) Neut. L. vigilare; act. weccan.

(⁴) Neut. L. pendere; act. hangan, hōn.

Some verbs of this Class, especially those having *e* for their vowel, form their imperfect and part. past in *-ede* and *ed*, as well as *-ode* and *od*; as, *herian to praise*, *seglian to sail*, *ge-fremian to profit*, which make *herede*, (*ge-*)*hered*, or *herode*, *herod*; *seglede*, and the like: *-ode* and *-od* are sometimes changed into *-ade* and *-ad*. *Swerian to swear*, borrows some tenses from a complex form, making imperf. *swerede* or *swór swore*; imp. subj. *swóre*; imper. *swera* or *swere*; part. past (*ge-*)*sworen sworn*. *Folgian, fyligan, or fylían to follow*, has imperf. *folgode*, *fyligde*, or *fylide*; imper. *folga* or *fylig*.

---

#### V.—Class II.

The second Class forms its imperfect and participle past in *-de* and *-ed*, or in *-te* and *-t*, according to its characteristic letter; the hard consonants, viz. *t, p, c, x*, requiring *-te* and *-t*; the soft, viz. *d, ð, f, g, w, l, m, n, r, s*, taking *-de* and *-ed*; as,

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
méte	métte	(ge-)mét	<i>meet(met)</i>
lette	lette	lett	<i>let, hinder</i>
dyppe	dypte	dypt	<i>dip(-t)</i>
tæce	tæhte	tæht	<i>teach(taught)</i>
lixe	lixte	lixt	<i>gleam(-ed)</i>
læde	lædde	læded	<i>lead(led)</i>
sendo	sendo	send	<i>send</i>
cýðe	cýðde	cýðed	<i>make known</i>
ge-lýfe	ge-lýfde	ge-lýfed	<i>believe(-d)</i>

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
wräge	wrégde	wréged	<i>be-wray(-ed)</i>
be-læwe	be-læwde	be-læwed	<i>accuse(-d)</i>
fylle	fylde	fylled	<i>fill(-ed)</i>
týme	týmde	týmed	<i>teem(-ed)</i>
wéne	wénde	wéned	<i>ween(-ed)</i>
lære	lærde	læred	<i>teach</i>
ræse	ræsde	ræsed	<i>rush(-ed).</i>

Some verbs in *-gan* are contracted; as, *þreagan*, *þreán to vex, reproach*, *twęógan*, *twęón to doubt*: pres. *þreage* or *þreá*, *þreást*, *þreáð*; pl. *þreagað*, *þreáð*, &c.; *twęóge* or *twęó*, *twęóst*, *twęóð*, &c.; imperf. *þreáde*, *twęóde*; part. past *þreáð*, *twęóð*.

The second and third persons singular sometimes make *-est*, *-ed*, especially when many consonants might otherwise meet; as, *nemne (I) name*, *nemnest*, *nemned*; imperf. *nemde*: some have both forms; as, *læde*, *lætst*, *læt*, or *lædest*, *læded*; part. past *læded* or *læd*. Verbs with *s*, *d*, and *t* form the third person in *-t*; as, *ræse*, *ræst*; *sende*, *sent*; *méte*, *mét*: those with *ð* in *ð*, as *cýðe*, *cýð*: imperf. *cýðde* or *cýdde*; p. past *cýðed* or *cýð*. Verbs in this and the following classes with a double characteristic, drop one letter and take *-e* in the imperative; as, *dyppe*, *dype*, and the like. To this class belong several transitives, derived from intransitives of the Complex Order; as, *bærnan to burn (act.)*, from *byrnan to burn (neut.)*; *drenca* (') *to drench*, from *drinca to drink*; *fylla* *to fell*, from

(') Comp. G. *tränken*, *fällen*, *senken*, *setzen*, from *trinken*, *fallen*, *sinken*, *sitzen*.

*feallan to fall; a-ræran to rear, from a-risan to arise; sencan to sink (act.), from sincan to sink (neut.); settan to set, from sittan to sit; ærnian to let run, from yrnan to run. Lybban to live, and hycgan to think, borrow some forms from leofian, and hogian: they are thus conjugated:—*

Indic. pres. 1. lybbe	Subj. pres. lybbe
2. leofast	plur. lybbon
3. leofað	Imperf. leofode
plur. { lybbað	plur. leofodon
{ lybbe	Imper. leofa
Imperf. leofode(-st)	plur. { lybbað
plur. leofodon	{ lybbe
Inf. pres. lybban	Part. pres. lybbende
Ger. lybbenne	P.past (ge-)leofod.

*Hæbban or habban*(<sup>1</sup>) *to have*, has some forms as if from *hafian*: it is thus conjugated:—

Ind. pres. 1. hæbbe (habbe)	Subj. pres. habbe (hæbbe)
2. hæfst (hafast)	plur. habbon
3. hæfð (hafað)	Imperf. hæfde
plur. { habbað(hafið)	plur. hæfdon
{ hæbbe (habbe)	Imper. hafa
Imperf. hæfde(-st)	plur. { habbað
plur. hæfdon	{ hæbbe
Inf. pres. hæbban(habban)	Part. pres. hæbbende
Ger. habbenne	P.past(ge-)hæfed, hæfd.

The first person present is sometimes in poetry *hafu*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. throughout L. *hab-ere*, G. *hab-en*.

or hafo. Nabban (for nehabban) *to have not*, has an Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, following habban.

### VI.—Class III.

The third Class changes *e* into *ea*, *é* into *ó*, &c. in the imperfect, forming it in *-de* or *-te*, and the part. past in *-d* or *-t* by the rules given above. The English synonyms commonly change the vowel in like manner, the German sometimes.

Pres.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
stelle	stealdo	(ge-) steald	<i>leap</i>
recce	reahte <sup>(2)</sup>	reaht	<i>reck (raught)</i>
syлле	sealdo	seald	<i>sell (sold)</i>
secge	{ sægde sæde	{ sægd sæd	} <i>say (said)</i>
lecge	lede	led	<i>lay (laid)</i>
bycge	bóhte	bóht	<i>buy (bought)</i>
séce	sóhte	sóht	<i>seek (sought)</i>
bringe <sup>(1)</sup>	bróhte	bróht	<i>bring (brought)</i>
wyrce	worhte	worht	<i>work (wrought)</i>

Secge makes 3 sing. pres. segð or sagað; imper. sege or saga. The impersonal þincan (G. dünken) *to seem*, must not be confounded with þencan (G. denken) *to think*. þincan makes 3 sing. pres. þincð (G. dünkt) *(me-)thinks*; plur. þincað; imperf. þúhte (G. dünkte) *(me-)thought*; part. past (ge-)þúht.

<sup>(1)</sup> Also rehte, &c.; réce, róhte is another form.

<sup>(2)</sup> Comp. G. bringe, brachte, ge-bracht.



*þencan* makes imperf. *þóhte* (G. *dachte*) *thought*; part. past (ge-) *þóht* (G. *ge-dacht*).

A few transitives also from complex intransitives belong to this class; as, *a-cwellan* *to kill* (*quell*), from *a-cwelan* *to perish* (*quail*); *lægan* <sup>(1)</sup> *to lay*, from *liegan* *to lie*; *weccan* *to awaken*, from *wacan* *to wake*. *Willan* <sup>(2)</sup> *to will*, and *nyllan* <sup>(3)</sup> *to will not*, are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	1. wille	Pres.	{ wille
	2. wilt		{ willon
	3. wile	Imperf.	{ wolde
	pl. { willað		{ woldon
	{ wille		
Imperf.	wolde (-st)	Pres.	willan
pl.	woldon	P. pres.	willende

---

Pres.	1. nelle	Pres.	nelle(nylle)
	2. nelt	pl.	nellon(nyllon)
	3. nele(nyle)	Imperf.	{ nolde
	pl. { nellað(nyllað)		{ noldon
	{ nelle	Imper.	{ nelle
Imperf.	{ nolde(-st)		{ nellað, &c.
	{ noldon	Infin.	nyllan.

#### VII.—Complex Order.

The Complex Order changes the vowel in the imperfect, as in English and German: the imperfect ends

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *legen*, *wecken*, from *liegen*, *wachen*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Βουλ-εσθαι*, L. *vell-e*, *vol-ui*; G. *woll-en*, *will*, &c. *woll-te*.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. *nolle*, for *ne velle*.

with the characteristic, which however if *bb* becomes *f*; if *g, h*: in the second pers. sing. and in the plural *h* again becomes *g*.

The Second Conjugation changes certain vowels in the second and third persons sing. present as in German. The part. past sometimes changes its vowel, as in English and German.

Examples—*brecan to break, healdan to hold, dragan to draw, drag.*

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
INDICATIVE MODE.		
Present.		
Sing. 1. <i>brece</i> (*)	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
2. <i>bricst</i>	<i>hyltst</i>	<i>drægst</i>
3. <i>bricð</i>	<i>hylt(healt)</i>	<i>drægð</i>
Plur. { <i>brecað</i>	{ <i>healdað</i>	{ <i>dragað</i>
{ <i>brece</i>	{ <i>healde</i>	{ <i>drage</i>
Imperfect.		
Sing. 1. <i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
2. <i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
3. <i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
Plur. <i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.		
Present.		
Sing. <i>brece</i>	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
Plur. <i>brecon</i>	<i>healdon</i>	<i>dragon</i>
Imperfect.		
Sing. <i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
Plur. <i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon.</i>

(\*) Comp. G. *brecbe, brichst, bricht*; *halte, hältst, hält*; plur. *brecben, halten, &c.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	IMPERATIVE MODE.		
Sing.	brec	heald	drag
Plur.	{ brecad brece	{ healdad healde	{ dragad drage
	INFINITIVE MODE.		
Pres.	brecan	healdan	dragan
Gen.	tó breccanne	—healdanne	—draganne
P. pres.	brecende	healdende	dragende
P. past.	(ge-)brocen	(ge-)healden	(ge-)dragen.

## VIII.—Class I.

In the First Class *e* becomes in the second and third persons sing. present, *i* or *y*; *i* remains unchanged, as in German. The imperfect is formed in *æ*, which in the second pers. sing. and the whole plural becomes *æ*; or in *ea*: in the part. past *i* sometimes becomes *e*; *e*, *o*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
{ sprece <sup>(1)</sup>	spricð	spræc	(ge-)sprecen
{ spece	spicð	spæc	specen
<i>speak</i>		<i>spake</i>	<i>spoken</i>
<i>trede</i>	<i>trit</i>	<i>træd</i>	<i>treden</i>
<i>tread</i>		<i>trod</i>	<i>trodden</i>
<i>ete</i>	<i>yt</i>	<i>æt</i>	<i>eten</i>
<i>eat</i>		<i>ate</i>	<i>aten</i>
<i>lese</i>	<i>list</i>	<i>læs</i>	<i>lesen</i>
<i>lease, gather</i>			

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *spreche*, *sprach*; *trote*, *trat*, *ge-treten*, &c. *ge-bäre*, *-bar*, *-boren*; *stahle*, *stahl*, *ge-stohlen*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
bidde	bitt	bæd	beden
<i>bid</i>		<i>bade</i>	<i>bidden</i>
sitte	sitt	sæt	seten
<i>sit</i>		<i>sate</i>	<i>sitten</i>
licge	lið	læg	legen
<i>lie</i>		<i>lay</i>	<i>lien, lain</i>
swefe	swefð	swæf	swefen
<i>sleep</i>			
bere	byrð	bær	boren
<i>bear</i>		<i>bare</i>	<i>born</i>
stele	styld	stæl	stolen
<i>steal</i>		<i>stole</i>	<i>stolen</i>
for-gite	for-git	for-geat	for-giten
<i>forget</i>		<i>forgat</i>	<i>forgotten</i>
gife	gifð	geaf	gifen
<i>give</i>		<i>gave</i>	<i>given</i>

Niman *to take*, makes third pers. pres. nimð; imperf. nam, name, &c. p. past numen. Cuman (cwuman) *to come* makes third pers. cymð; imperf. com (cwom), come, &c. p. past cumen.

Wesan *to be* is thus conjugated :

INDICATIVE.

Pres. 1. eom <sup>(*)</sup>	Imperf. 1. wæs
2. eart	2. wære
3. is (ys)	3. wæs
plur. synd (syndon)	plur. wæron

(\*) Comp. *εμ-ε, εσ-ε*; L. *sum, est, sum-us, sunt, sim, es-am, &c.*; G. *ist, sind, seyð, sey, war, wære, ge-wesen.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. sý, (síg, seó)	Imperf. wære
plur. sýn	plur. wæron
Imper. wes	Inf. pres. wesan
plur. { wesad	Ger. tó wesanne
{ wese	Part. pres. wesende
Part. past (ge-)wesen.	

With some of these forms the negative *ne* is thus combined :

Pres. 1. (*ic*) *neom* (*I am not*). 3. *nis* (*nys*) ; imperf. *næs*, &c. ; subj. imperf. *nære*, &c.

*Cweðan to say* is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. *cweðe*, *cwyst*, *cwyt* ; imperf. *cwæð*, *cwæde*, *cwæð* (*quoth*), pl. *cwædon* ; subj. pres. *cweðe*, imperf. *cwæde* ; part. past (ge-)cweden : it is otherwise regular.

## IX.—Class II.

In the Second Class *á* becomes *æ* ; *ea*, *y* ; *eá*, *ý* ; *ó*, *é*, in the second and third persons : the imperf. has *é*, or *eó* (*e* or *eo*).

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>læte</i> <sup>(1)</sup>	<i>læt</i>	<i>let</i>	(ge-)læten
<i>let</i>			
<i>slæpe</i>	<i>slæpð</i>	<i>slép</i>	<i>slæpen</i>
<i>sleep</i>		<i>sleep-t</i> <sup>(2)</sup>	

(1) Comp. G. *lasse*, *lässt*, *liess*, *ge-lassen* ; *beisse*, *hiess* ; *wachse*, *wuchs* ; *laufe*, *läuft*, *lief*, &c.

(2) *Slept*, *lept*, *swept*, *wep*, are complex forms become simple : *sleep*, *lep*, &c., as also *bet*, are still in P. use.

1 <sup>st</sup> pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
te mand	hæt	{ héht <sup>(2)</sup> hét }	hátén
ge, hó	héht	heng hung	hangen
alde	wylt	weóld	wealden.
ern, wield			
lle	fyld	feoll	feallen
l	(feald)	fell	fallen
axe	wyxd	weox	weaxen
x, grow			waxen
áte	beáted	beót	beáten
it		(bet)	beaten
óte	blét	bleót	blóten
trifce			
éape	hlýpð	hleóp	hleápen
ep		lep-t	
ápe	swápeð	sweóp	swápen
cep	(swápeð)	swep-t	
épe	wépeð	weóp	wépen
ep		wep-t	
áwe	cnæwð	cneów	cnáwen
ow		knew	known
áwe	heáweð	heów	heówen
w		hewn	
ówe	gréwð	greów	grówen
ow		grew	grown

(2) Héht is a relic of the reduplication in use in Gothic as in Greek, of which Latin retains several instances; leólc from lácán to play (like), is of like nature.

The imperfects without an accent are of doubtful quantity.

Hátan when meaning *to be called*, has the simple imperfect hátte, but part. past (ge-)hátén.

Hó makes pres. plur. húđ, hó; imper. hoh; infin. hangan or hón, and is followed by fangan, fón *to take*.

Cneow and the like often become cnéw &c.

Gangan, gán (<sup>1</sup>) *to go*, dón *to do*, and búan *to inhabit, cultivate* (G. bauen, L. colere) are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		
Pres. 1. gange, gá(*)	dó	búe
2. gæst	dést	býst
3. gæđ	déđ	býđ
pl. { gáđ	{ dóđ	
{ gá	{ dó	
Imperf. geóng, eóde	dyde	búde
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Sing. gá	dó	bú
Pl. gán	dón	bún
IMPERATIVE.		
Sing. gang, gá	dó	
Pl. { gáđ	{ dóđ	
{ gá	{ dó	

(<sup>1</sup>) S. and P. gang, gae. The contracted forms are most used; eóde is the common imperfect, geong the poetical.

(\*) Comp. G. gehe, gieng, ge-gangen; thue, that, ge-than.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	gangan, gán	dón	búan
Ger.		tó dónne	
P. pres.	gangende	dónde	búendo
P. past	gangen, gán	(ge-)dón	(ge-)bún.

X.—Class III.

In the Third Class, a becomes æ; éá, ý, &c. in the second and third persons: the imperfect has ó.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scace	scæcð	scóc (sceóc)	(ge-)scacen
<i>shake</i>		<i>shook</i>	<i>shaken</i>
fare <sup>(*)</sup>	færð	fór	faren
<i>fare, go</i>			
hlihhe	hlihð	hlóh	hlogen
<i>laugh</i>			
sleá	slýhð	slóh	slegen
<i>slay</i>		<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>
hlade	hlæt	hlód	hladen
<i>lade</i>			<i>laden</i>
grafe	græfð	gróf	grafen
<i>grave, dig</i>			<i>graven</i>
hebbe	hefð	hóf	hafen
<i>heave</i>		<i>hove</i>	
scyppe	scypð	scóp (sceóp)	sceapen
<i>shape, create</i>			<i>shapen</i>
wacse	wæxð	wócs	wæscen
<i>wash</i>			<i>washen</i>

(\*) G. fahre, fährt, fuhr, ge-fahren; schlage, schlug; hebe, hob, gehoben; scheide, schied, ge-schieden, &c.



First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
stande	stent	stóð	standen
<i>stand</i>		<i>stood</i>	
gale	gæld	gól	galen
<i>enchant</i>			
spane	spænd	spón	spanen
<i>allure</i>			
sceade	scyt	sceóð(')	sceaden
<i>part, shed</i>			

Sleá makes imper. slýh or sléh; infin. sleán: thus also leán *to blame*, and þweán *to wash*; p. past þwegen, þwogen. Stande sometimes has standest, standeð.

### XI.—Conjugation III.

In the Third Conjugation the vowel remains the same in the present; but that of the imperfect is changed in the second person singular, and in the whole plural: the part. past has either the same vowel as these persons, or one near akin.

Examples:—bindan *to bind*, drífan *to drive*, clúfan *to cleave*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	INDICATIVE MODE.	
	Present.	
Sing. 1. binde	drífe	clúfo
• 2. bintst	drífst	clúfst
3. bint	drífd	clúfd

(') P. shed.

Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe
-------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

Imperfect.

Sing. 1.	band	dráf	cleáf
2.	bunde	drífe	clufe
3.	band	dráf	cleáf
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present.

Sing.	binde	drífe	clúfe
Plur.	bindon	drifon	clúfon

Imperfect.

Sing.	bunde	drífe	clufe
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	bind	dríf	clúf
Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	bindan	drífan	clúfan
Ger.	bindanne	drífanne	clúfanne
P. pres.	bindende	drífende	clúfende
P. past (ge-)	bunden (ge-)	drifen	(ge-)clofen.

---

XII.—Class I.

In the First Class, i (y), e, eo, become a (o), ea, æ, in the imperfect, and these in the second person and plural are again changed to u: the part. past has u or o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
yrne <sup>(1)</sup>	yrnd	arn	(ge-)urnen
<i>run</i>		<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>
{ frine	frind	fran	frunen }
{ frigne		frægn	frugnen }
<i>enquire</i>			
singe	singd	sang	sungen
<i>sing</i>		<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
drince	drined	dranc	druncen
<i>drink</i>		<i>drank</i>	<i>drunken</i>
swimme	swimd	swamm	swommen
<i>swim</i>		<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>
climbe	climbð	clomm	clumben
<i>climb</i>		<i>clomb</i>	
swelle	swyld	sweoll	swollen
<i>swell</i>			<i>swollen</i>
swelge	swylgd	swealh	swolgen
<i>swallow</i>			
melte	mylt	mealt	molten
<i>melt</i>			<i>molten</i>
gelde	gylt	geald	golden
<i>pay</i>			
helpe	hyld	healp	holpen
<i>help</i>			<i>holpen</i>
delfe	dylfd	dealf	dolfen
<i>delve</i>			
murne	myrnd	mearn	mornen
<i>mourn</i>			

(<sup>1</sup>) G. rinne, rann, ge-ronnen; singe, sang, ge-sungen; trinke, trank; schwelle, schwillt, schwoll, ge-schwollen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
beorge <i>save, defend</i>	byrgð	bearh	borgen
weorpe <i>throw</i>	wyrpð	wearp	worpen
steorfe <i>die, starve</i>	styrfd	stærf	storfen
berste <i>burst</i>	byrst	bærst	borsten <i>borsten</i>
þersce <i>thresh</i>	þyrscð	þærsc	þorscen
feohte <i>fight</i>	fyht	feaht <i>fought</i>	fohten <i>foughten</i>
{ bregde brede <i>braid, draw</i>	brit	brægd bræd	{ brogden broden }

Weorðan<sup>(\*)</sup> *to be, to become*, is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. sing. 1. weorðe	Subj. pres. weorðe, &c.
2. wyrst	Imperf. wurde, &c.
3. wyrd	Imperf. weorð
plur. { weorðað weorðe	plur. { weorðað weorðe

Imperf. sing. 1. wearð	Inf. pres. weorðan
2. wurde	Ger. weorðanne
3. wearð	Part. pres. weorðende
plur. wurden	P. past (ge-)worden

(\*) Comp. throughout G. werden.

XIII.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class, *i* becomes in the imperfect *á*, and this in the second person, &c. *i*: the part. past has likewise *i*.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scíne <sup>(1)</sup>	scínd	scán	(ge-)scinen
<i>shine</i>		<i>shone</i>	
write	writ	wrát	writen
<i>write</i>		<i>wrote</i>	<i>written</i>
a-rise	a-ríst	a-rás	a-risen
<i>arise</i>		<i>arose</i>	<i>arisen</i>
be-swíce	be-swícd	be-swác	be-swícen
<i>deceive</i>			
stíge	stíhđ	stáh	stigen
<i>ascend</i>			
a-bíde	a-bíded	a-bád	a-bíden
<i>abide</i>		<i>abode</i>	<i>abiden</i>
grípe	grípđ	gráp	grípen
<i>gripe</i>			
ríde	rít	rád	riden
<i>ride</i>		<i>rode</i>	<i>ridden</i>
spíwe	spíwđ	spáw	spiwen
<i>spew</i>			<i>spewn</i>
wríde	wríđ	wráđ	wríden
<i>writhe, wreath</i>			

(<sup>1</sup>) G. *scheine*, *schien*, *ge-schienen*; *steige*, *stieg*; *greife*, *griff*, *ge-griffen*, &c.

XIV.—*Class III.*

In the Third Class, *eó* or *ú* becomes *eá* in the imperfect; in the second person &c. *u*: the part. past has *o*.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
reóce( <sup>s</sup> )	rýcđ	reác	(ge-)rocen
<i>reek</i>			
sceóte	scýt	sceát	scoten
<i>shoot</i>		<i>shot</i>	<i>shotten</i>
creópe	crýpđ	creáp	cropen
<i>creep</i>			
ceówe	cýwđ	ceáw	cowen
<i>chew</i>			
leóge	lýhđ	leáh	logen
<i>lye</i>			
fleóge	flýhđ	fleáh	flogen
<i>fly, flee</i>		<i>flew</i>	<i>flown</i>
beóde		beád	boden
<i>bid</i>		<i>bade</i>	<i>bidden</i>
súce	sýcđ	seác	socen
<i>suck</i>			
búge	býhđ	beáh	bogen
<i>bow, bend</i>			<i>bowen</i>
lúte	lýt	leát	loten
<i>lout, bow</i>			

(<sup>s</sup>) G. rieche, roch, ge-rochen; schiesse, schoss, &c.

*Ceósan to choose*, makes third pers. pres. *eýst*; imperf. *ceás chose*, second pers. *cure*, plur. *curon*; p. past *coren*(<sup>1</sup>).

*Seóðan to seethe*, has third pers. *sýð*; imperf. *seáð*, *sode*, &c.; p. past *soden soddén*.(<sup>2</sup>) Thus also others in *-san* and *-ðan*.

*Fleóge* is contracted to *fleó*, plur. *fleóð*, *fleó*; infin. *fleógan*, *fleón*; thus likewise *teógan*, *teón to draw*, *tug*: *wreón to cover*, and *þeón to thrive*, have only the contracted forms.

*Seón to see*, makes imperf. *seáh* or *séh*, *sáwe* or *sége*, &c. imper. *seóh* or *sýh*; part. present *seónde*; part. past (ge-)sewen, or *segen*.

*Ge-feón (-feán) to rejoice*, has imperf. *ge-feáh* or *-féh*, *ge-fage* or *-fege*; part. past *ge-fagen*, *-fægen*. *Beón to be*, is defective :

Indic. pres. 1. <i>beó</i> ( <sup>3</sup> )	Subj. pres. <i>beó</i>
2. <i>býst</i>	plur. <i>beón</i>
3. <i>býð</i>	Imper. <i>beó</i>
plur. { <i>beóð</i>	plur. { <i>beóð</i>
<i>beó</i>	<i>beó</i> .

Infin. *beón*. Ger. *tó beónne*. Part. pres. *beónda*.

#### XV.—*Anomalous Verbs.*

The following verbs are Anomalous, having for the present an old imperfect of the Complex Order, and their imperfect one formed since after the Simple Order.

(<sup>1</sup>) G. *kies*, *kor*, *ge-koren*.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. *siede*, *sott*, *ge-sotten*.

(<sup>3</sup>) G. *bin*, *bist*.

Pres. 1. 3. A'h, 2. áge, pl. ágon (*owe*); imperf. áhte (*ought*); infin. ágan; p. past. ágen: *own, possess*. Likewise combined with ne; náh, náhte, &c.

An, 2. unne, pl. unnon; imperf. úde; inf. unnan; p. past (ge-)unnen: *grant*.

Can<sup>(1)</sup> (*can*); 2. cunne or canst, pl. cunnon; imp. cúde (*could*); inf. cunnan; p. past (ge-)cúð: *know, ken, be able*.

Deáh, duge, dugon; imp. dóhte; inf. dúgan: *be good, brave, worth*.

Dear, dearst, durren; subj. durre: imp. dorste (*durst*); inf. dearan: *dare*.

Ge-man<sup>(3)</sup>, ge-manst, ge-munon; imp. ge-munde; inf. ge-munan: *remember*.

Mæg<sup>(4)</sup>, miht, magon (*may*); subj. mæge (*mage*); imp. mihte (*meahte*) (*might*); inf. magan: *be able*.

Mót<sup>(5)</sup>, móst, móton; subj. móte; imp. móste: *may, might, must*.

Sceal<sup>(6)</sup> (*shall*), scealt (*shalt*), sceolon (*sculon*); subj. scyle; imp. sceolde (*should*); inf. sculan: *owe*.

Wát<sup>(7)</sup> (*wot*), wást, witon; imp. wiste (*wisse*) (*wist*); subj. wíte; imper. wíte, wítað; inf. wítan; ger. tó wítanne (*to wit*); p. pres. wítende; p. past witen: *know*. Thus also nýtan *to know not*.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. L. *novi* I *know*; G. *kenne, kann, kannte, konnte, &c.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. L. defective *me-min-i* I *remember*.

(<sup>4</sup>) G. *mag, möge, mögte, &c.*

(<sup>5</sup>) G. *muss, musste, &c.*

(<sup>6</sup>) G. *soll, sollte, &c.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Comp. *oida* I *know*; G. *weiss, wusste, wissen*; L. *scio*; as distinguished from *can* (*en áwe*) γινωσκω, L. *novi*.



þearf<sup>(1)</sup>, þearft or þurfe, þurfon; subj. þurfe;  
imp. þorfte; inf. þearfan: *need*.

### XVI.—Auxiliaries, &c.

The A. S. has no future tense, the pr serving  
for both: wille and sceal, like G. will l, imply  
will, duty, and the like, and are not like *will* and  
*shall*, to form a simple future; the p of beón has  
commonly a future power. T d plu  
are formed as in English, t by t  
verb *to have*; as, ic hæbbe (ge-)lufod I (2)  
The participle past being as in the above d to  
the only true passive form, the passive te to  
throughout by the help of the auxilia: san,  
weorðan, and beón *to be*; as, present ic eom, or  
weorðe lufod<sup>(3)</sup> I *am loved*; imperf. ic wæs, or  
weard lufod; perf. ic eom lufod worden I  
*been loved*; pluperf. ic wæs lufod worden I *had b*  
*loved*; future, ic beo lufod I *shall be loved*.

Impersonal verbs are like those of other languages;  
as, hit rind it rains; hit ge-limpð it happens. Some  
have a passive sense; as, a-lýfd it is allowed, lawful (L.  
licet); ge-wyrð it is agreed, seems good (L. convenit).

(1) G. darf, dürfte.

(2) The imperfect is often used for the pluperfect.

(3) Comp. G. ich habe, hatte, werde, wurde, ge-liebt; ich bin, war,  
geliebt worden.

## CHAPTER VI.

### I.—*Formation of Words. Prefixes.*

As in Greek, Latin, German, &c. this branch of the language must be strictly attended to, if we would learn the origin, gender, and inflection of words: it consists of Derivation, and Composition, in both which the A. S. resembles the German. Derivation either modifies the meaning of a word by putting before it a prefix, or changes its part of speech, and inflection, by adding a termination. Composition forms new words by joining one or more together.

The following are the chief prefixes:

un- (on-) (L. *in-*; E. and G. *un-*): un-scyldig (G. in-schuldig) *in-nocent*; un-tigian *to un-tie*.

n- (ne *not*; L. *ne*): n-yllan (for newillan; L. *n-olle* or *ne velle*) *to will not, nill*; n-án *none*.

mis- (E. *mis-*; G. *miss-, misse-*): mis-truwian (G. mis-trauen) *to mis-trust*; mis-dæd (G. misse-that) *mis-leed*.

wan-<sup>(4)</sup> (wana *wanting*): wan-hál *unhealthy*.

to-<sup>(5)</sup> (L. *dis-*; G. *zer-*): to-breca (L. *dis-rumpere*, J. *zer-brechen*) *to break in pieces*; to-drífan (L. *dis-sellere*, G. *zer-treiben*) *to scatter, drive away*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Hence O. *wan-hope* (D. *wan-hoop*) *despair*; *wan-trust* (D. *wan-trouw*) *mis-trust*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Hence O. *to-broken, to-torn* &c. The prefix *to-* must be carefully distinguished from the preposition *tó*.

for- (') (L. *per-*; F. *for-*; G. *ver-*): for-beóðan (G. *ver-bieten*) *to for-bid*; for-swerian (L. *per-jurare*) *to for-swear*; for-gán *to for-go*; for-bærnian (G. *ver-brennen*) *to burn up, consume*; for-gifan (G. *ver-geben*) *to give away, for-give*.

wider- (wid *against*; G. *wider-*): wider-saca (G. *wider-sacher*) *adversary*.

and- (ávri; G. *ant-*): and-wlíta (G. *ant-litz*) *countenance*.

ge- (G. *ge-*; L. *com-, con-, co-*): has in general a collective sense; as, ge-bróðra (G. *ge-brüder*) *brethren*; ge-scy (G. *ge-schuhe*, F. *chaussure*) *shoes*; ge-mæne (G. *ge-mein*, L. *com-mune*) *common*; ge-fera (G. *ge-fährte*, L. *com-es*) *companion*; it forms active verbs from neuters, nouns, &c. as, ge-standan *to urge*; ge-pencan (G. *ge-denken*) *to think of, remember*; ge-strangian *to strengthen*; ge-leánian *to reward*; ge-niderian *to degrade, condemn*; from standan, pencan, strang, leán (*reward*), nider; or gives a figurative sense; as, biddan *to ask, beg*, ge-biddan *to pray*. Many words, however, take ge- without any change of meaning; as, seón, ge-seón *to see*; híran, ge-híran *to hear, obey*; mearc, ge-mearc *mark, limit*; rúm, ge-rúm *wide, roomy*.

be- (E. and G. *be-*) makes neuter verbs active; as, gán *to go*, be-gán *to commit, &c.* (G. *gehen, be-gehen*); feran *to go*, be-feran *to travel over* (G. *fahren, be-fahren*). It is sometimes privative; as, bycgan *to buy*, be-bycgan *to sell*; be-heáfdian *to be-head*: often in-

(') Hence O. *for-done, for-spent, &c.* The prefix *for-* must not be confounded with the preposition *for*, which seems not to occur in composition.

tensive; as, *reáfian to rob*, *be-reáfian to be-reave* (G. *rauben*, *be-rauben*); *be-gyrdan* (G. *be-gürten*) *to begird*; or otherwise modifies the sense; as, *be-healdan to be-hold*, *be-sprecan* (G. *be-sprechen*) *to be-speak*,

*ed- (again, re-)*: *ed-niwian to re-new*.

*sin- (simle always, L. semper)*: *sin-grén ever-green*.

*sam- (L. semi-)*: *sam-cuce(\*) half-quick, half-dead*.

*æg- or ge-* gives pronouns and adverbs an indeterminate sense; as, *æg-hwylc (ge-hwylc) each, every*, *æg-hwider whithersoever*.

## II.—Nominal Terminations.

The following are the chief Nominal Terminations, denoting for the most part persons:

*-a(\*)*: *cemp-a warrior, champion*; *hunt-a hunter*; *bog-a bow*.

*-ere*: (E. and G. *-er*; L. *-or*): *reáf-ere (G. raub-er) robb-er*; *sæd-ere (L. sat-or) sow-er*.

*-end* (from the part. pres.): *Hæl-end (G. Heil-and) Saviour, healer*; *weald-end ruler*.

*-e*: *hyrd-e herd, keeper*; *sig-e victory*; *riht-wis-e righteousness*.

*-el, -ol, -l* (E. *-le*; G. *-el*): *byd-el (G. bed-el) herald, bead-le*; *gaf-ol tribute, gav-el*; *set-l (G. sess-el) seat, sett-le*.

*-ing*: *æðel-ing prince, young noble*; *Wóden-ing son of Woden*; *earm-ing poor wretch*.

(\*) *Cuc, cucu, cuceu, cwic (-e)* are also found.

(\*) Answering sometimes to L. *-o*; as, *gum-a, L. hom-o man, groom*; hence *brýð-guma G. bräuti-gam, bride-groom*.

-ling (E. *-ling*; G. *-lein, -ling*): cnæp-ling (G. knāb-lein) *little boy*; leór-ling (G. theuer-ling) *darling*.

-incle (L. *-uncul-us, -a*): ráp-incle *little rope*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-chen*): mægd-en *maid-en*, from mægð *maid* (G. magd, mäd-chen); cyc-en *chick-en*, from coce *cock*.

-en (E. *-en*): þeód-en *sovereign*; byrd-en *burth-en*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-in*). Feminines from masculines sometimes change the vowel; as, þen, þin-en *slave, female slave*; fox, fyx-en (G. fuchs, fuchs-in) *fox, vix-en*; sometimes not; as, þeów, þeów-en *slave*. Some change the vowel, and take -e; others change the vowel only; as, mearh, myr-e *horse, mare*; wulf, wylf (G. wolf, wölf-in) *wolf, she-wolf*.

-estre (E. and D. *-ster*): sang-estre (D. zang-ster) *song-ster*, from sangere *singer*; sæm-estre *seam-ster*, from sæm-ere *seamer, tailor*.<sup>(1)</sup>

The following denote a state, action, or the like:

-dóm (E. *-dom*; G. *-thum*): wís-dóm *wis-dom*; cyne-dóm<sup>(2)</sup> (G. könig-thum) *king-ship*.

-hád (E. *-head, -hood*; G. *-heit*): mæden-hád *maid-en-head*; cild-hád (G. kind-heit) *child-hood*.

(<sup>1</sup>) In *songstr-ess, seamstr-ess*, a Latin-French termination has been super-added. *Huck-ster, malt-ster, tap-ster*, and the like, are the true feminines of *hawk-er, malt-er, tapp-er*, &c. *Spin-ster* is yet rightly used.

(<sup>2</sup>) We have confounded *-dom* and *-ric*, but *-dóm* was properly the *office, rank, -rice* the *territory*: thus, *cýne-dóm, cýne-ríce* (G. könig-reich); *bisceop-dóm, bisceop-ríce*, and the like.

-scipe (E. *-ship*; G. *-schaft*): hláford-scipe *lordship*; freónd-scipe (G. *freund-schaft*) *friend-ship*.

-lác (E. *-lock*): wíf-lác, *wed-lock*.

-að, -oð: hunt-að *hunting*; war-oð *sea-shore*.

-uð, -ð (E. *-th*; G. *-end*): geóg-uð (G. *jug-end*), *youth*; treów-ð *troth, truth*.

-leást (-lýst; from adj. in -leás): gýme-leást *heedlessness*.

-ung, -ing (E. *-ing*; G. *-ung*): hál-g-ung (G. *heilig-ung*) *hallow-ing*; leorn-ing *learn-ing*.

-nes (-nys, -nis; E. *-ness*; G. *-niss*): car-leás-nes *careless-ness*; ge-líc-nes (G. *gleich-niss*) *like-ness*.

-u, -eo, -o (G. *-e*): hæ-t-u (G. *hitz-e*) *heat*; mænig-eo (G. *meng-e*) *many, multitude*; bræd-o (G. *breit-e*) *breadth*.

-els (E. *-le*; G. *-el*): ræd-els (G. *räths-el*) *ridd-le*; sticc-els (G. *stach-el*) *stick-le, sting*.

-ed: rec-ed *mansion*; eow-ed *flock*.

-m (E. *-om*; G. *-en*): bot-m (G. *bod-en*) *bott-om*.

-ot, -et, -t: þeow-ot, þeow-t *slavery*; bærn-et *burning*.

-d, -t (E. *-th, -d, -t*; G. *-t*): ge-byr-d (G. *ge-bur-t*) *bir-th*; ge-cyn-d *kin-d, nature*; mih-t (G. *mach-t*) *migh-t*.

-ræden (ræd *counsel*): hīw-ræden *house-hold*; mæg-ræden *relationship*.

### III.—Adjectival Terminations.

-e: ædel-e *noble*; fæg-e *fated, fcy*.

-ig (E. *-y*, G. *-ig*): dreó-r-ig (G. *traur-ig*) *drear-y*; hys-ig *bus-y*.

-lic (E. *-like*, *-ly*, G. *-lich*): leóf-lic (G. lieb-lich) *love-ly*; wif-lic (G. weib-lich) *woman-like*, *woman-ly*.

-isc (E. *-ish*, G. *isch*): cild-isc (G. kind-isch) *child-ish*; Engl-isc (G. engl-isch) *Engl-ish*, *Anglo-Saxon*.

-sum (E. *-some*, G. *-sam*): lang-sum (G. lang-sam) *tedious*, *long-some*; wyn-sum (G. wonne-sam) *amiable*, *win-some*.

-ol (-ul) (L. *-ul-us*): sprec-ol *talkative*.

-en (E. and G. *en*): fleax-en (G. flachs-en) *flax-en*; hæð-en *heath-en*.

-bære (beran *to bear*: G. *-bar*): lust-bære (G. lust-bar) *pleasant*; wæstm-bære *fruitful*.

-cund (cynn *kind*, *race*): woruld-cund *worldly*.

-iht (G. *-icht*): þorn-iht (G. dorn-icht) *thorny*.

-weard (adj. and adv.; E. *-ward*): tó-weard *to-ward*, *to come*; hám-weard *home-ward*.

-feald (E. *-fold*): án-feald *single*, *one-fold*; twi-feald, *two-fold*; manig-feald *mani-fold*.

-leás (E. *-less*, G. *-los*): syn-leás (G. sünde-los) *sin-less*; ár-leás (G. ehr-los) *void of honour*, *impious*.

-wís (*wise*): ge-wís (G. ge-wiss) *certain*; riht-wís *righteous*.

-ern (E. *-ern*): súð-ern *south-ern*.

-tyme: hefig-tyme *troublesome*.

---

#### IV.—Verbal Terminations.

-ian (-igan, -igean) forms verbs (I. 1.) from nouns, adjectives, and particles; as, cear-ian *to care*, ge-hýrsumian *to obey*, wider-ian *to oppose*; from cearu *care*, ge-hýrsum *obedient*, wider *against*.

---

C, g, n, or s, sometimes stands before -ian; as, gear-c-ian *to prepare*, syn-g-ian *to sin*, wít-n-ian *to punish*, mæ-r-s-ian *to magnify*; from gearu *ready*, yare, syn sin, wíte *punishment*, mære *great*, famous.

-án is contracted from -angan, -ágan, or -agan, and -ahan; as, gangan, gán *to go*; smeágan, smeán *to consider, enquire*; þreagan, þreán *to vex*; sleahan, sleán (G. schlagen) *to strike, slay*.

-ón is contracted from -angan, or -ógan; as, fangan, fón *to take*; teógan, teón *to draw, tug*.

-ettan: hál-ettan *to hail, greet*, from hál *whole, hale*.

After c and g, e is not seldom inserted; as, ræc-ean, þicg-ean, for ræc-an *to reach*, þicg-an *to touch, taste, &c.*

Other verbs in general form the infinitive in -an.

### V.—Particles.

Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are either primitive words, that is, not to be further resolved in the language treated of, or are formed from nouns (often obsolete), adjectives, &c. governed by a preposition expressed or understood. Of the former kind are nú *now*, geó (iú), *formerly*, eft *again*, get (iet), *yet*, be *by*, &c. for *for*, tó *to*, ac *but*, gif *if*, &c. Of the latter kind, (to take the cases in order) are the accusatives on-weg (a-weg) *a-way*; on-bæc (under-, ofer-bæc) *a-back, back*; (on-)ge-mang *a-mong*; on-gean (a-gen) *a-gain, a-against*; ealne-weg *al-way*.



-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,<sup>(1)</sup> &c.; as, on-riht-e (L. rect-e)<sup>(2)</sup> *a-riht a-right, rightly*; lang-e (L. long-e) *long*; mid-ealle *altogether*; be-dæle *partly*; tó-sóðe *in sooth, truly*; of-dúne, a-dún *a-down, down*; tó-gædere (æt-gædere), tó-somne (æt-somne, G. zu-sammen), *to-gether*.

líc-e (E. -ly; the same, borrowed from adjectives in -líc): sceort-líc-e *short-ly*, strang-líc-e *strong-ly*.

Other ablatives are the conjunctions for-þý *therefore*; (for-) hwý? (*for*) *why?*; datives for-þám *because*, tó-þón-þæt *in order that*, síð-þán (G. seit-dem) *since*.

-um, -on (abl. or dat. plur.): (on) hwíl-um, hwíl-on *whilome, whiles*, wundr-um *wondrously*, hwyrft-um *by turns*, sticce-mælum<sup>(3)</sup> *piece-meal*, be lytl-um and lytl-um *by little and little*, furd-um (-on) *even, just, on-sundr-on in-sunder, a-sunder*.

-es (genitive): niht-es<sup>(4)</sup> (νυκτ-ος, G. nacht-s) *of a night, by night*, will-es *willingly*, néd-es *of necessity, needs*, eall-es *altogether*, nall-es *by no means*, sóð-es *of a truth*, tó-gean-es *against*, tó-midd-es *amidst*.

-a, -unga, -inga (perhaps gen. plur.): gear-a *of*

(1) Those in -h and -u take g and w, as, heáh, heáge; nearu, nearwe: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(2) L. adverbs in -e were perhaps ablatives, like those in -o, as ver-e and the like.

(3) Stic (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. stück); mæl (II. 3) (G. mahl) *meal, time of eating, milking cows, &c.*

(4) The proper genitives of niht, willa, and néd (neód) are nihte, willan, néde; at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in -es or s; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in -ος &c. and -is.

*yore*, son-*a soon*, *forthwith*, eall-unga *altogether*, hol-  
inga *in vain*, yrr-inga *angrily*.

-an (an oblique case): níw-an *of late*, newly, for-an  
*before*, on-midd-an, a-midd-an *a-mid*, wið-út-an  
*without*, búf-an<sup>(\*)</sup> (for be-úf-an) *a-bove*; a-bút-an (for  
on-be-út-an) *a-bout*, &c.

Other adverbial terminations are:—

-der (*motion to*): hi-der *hi-ther*, þi-der *thi-ther*,  
hwi-der *whi-ther*.

-on, -an (*motion from*): heon-on *hence*, þan-on  
*thence*, hwan-on *whence*.

-r, -ra, -e, &c. (*rest in*): her *here*, þær (para) *there*  
hwær (hwar) *where*; inn-e *within*, út-e *without*.

## VI.—Composition.<sup>(\*)</sup>

The A. S. language, like the Greek, German, &c.  
abounds in compound words, of which the last part com-  
monly settles the part of speech. Nouns and adjectives  
are usually compounded together, and with verbs, with-  
out change, as in English, &c.; as, *fíc-treów fig-tree*,  
*heáfod-man* (G. *haupt-mann*) *head-man*, *captain*, *heáh*  
*sacerd*, *high-priest*, *bisceop-ric* *bishop-ric*, *stæf-*  
*cræft letter-craft*, *grammar*, *medo-ærn*<sup>(7)</sup> *mead-hall*,  
*þeow-boren slave-born*, *stede-fæst stead-fast*, *bealo-*  
*full baleful*, *snáw-hwít* (G. *schnee-weiss*) *snow-white*,  
*íren-heard* (G. *eisen-hart*) *as hard as iron*, *lif-fæstan*

(\*) D. *boven*; “*Oranje boven!*”      (7) See *Rask*, pp. 113—117.

(\*) Or -*ern*; *sealt-ern salt-ern*.

to *quicken*, ful-fremman (G. voll-bringen) to *ful-fil*, and the like.

A noun, however, standing first, is often put in the genitive case, especially in local names; as, dômes-dæg *doom's-day*, hilde-byrne *war-corslet*; Engla-land *England, land of the Angles*; Cant-wara-burh *Canterbury, burgh of the Kenters*; Cinges-tún *King's-town, Kingston*; Beorminga-hám *Birming-ham, home of the Beormings*; Oxena-ford *Ox-ford, ford of oxen*; from dóm, hild, Engle, Cant-ware, cing, Beorming, oxa. One or each part is sometimes shortened, &c.; as, frum-cenned *first-born*, æl-beorht *all-bright*, mild-heort *mild-hearted*; from fruma *beginning*, eall, milde, heorte. Prepositions and adverbs commonly stand before verbs, &c. without change, as in English, German, &c.; as, ymb-gang (G. um-gang) *circuit*; purh-faran (G. durch-fahren) to *go through*; wið-standan (G. wider-stehen) to *with-stand*; tó-cyme *coming to* (L. ad-ventus); fore-rynel *fore-runner*; fore-mihtig (L. præ-potens) *very mighty*; úp-riht (G. auf-recht) *up-right*; úp-stígan<sup>(1)</sup> (G. auf-steigen) to *go up*; nider-stígan (G. nieder-steigen) to *go down*; forð-gán (G. fort-gehen) to *go forth*; út-lág *out-law* (L. ex-lex); ofer-cuman to *over-come*; ofer-mód (G. über-muth) *pride*; under-niman (G. unter-nehmen) to *under-take*; fram-ge-wítan to *depart from*; in-lædan (G. ein-leiten) to *lead in*; geond-geótan to *pour through, suffuse*; on-gean-cyrran to *turn back again*; of-sceótan

(<sup>1</sup>) Stígan (G. steigen) answers to L. scandere; ad-scendere, descendere, &c.

(G. *ab-schiessen*) *to shoot off*; *æfter-fyligend successor, one who follows after*; *mid-síðian to travel with*; *sundur-spræc conversation apart*; *samod-(sam-)-wyr-an to work together, co-operate.*

The preposition *be, bi*, usually becomes *big* in composition; as, *big-spel* (G. *bei-spiel*) *example, parable*; *big-standan* (G. *bei-stehen*) *to stand by*; it may thus be known from the particle *be*, which sometimes becomes *bi*; as, *be-standan, bi-standan* (G. *be-stehen*) *to stand on, occupy*.<sup>(\*)</sup> *On* often becomes *an- or a-*; as, *on-bídan, an-bídan, a-bídan to a-bide.* *Æt* and *oð* in composition often mean *from, away*; as, *æt-berstan to burst away, oð-yrnan to run away, escape, like G. ent-bersten, -rinnen.*

Particles are also freely compounded together.

Prepositions, and other particles in composition, are often parted from their verb, as in German; but the same rules can hardly be given in A. S.

In general, *purh, úp, niðer, tó, forð, út, in, on, bi* (*big*) are separable; *a-, an-, be-, ge-, ed-, un-, or-, mis-, oð, and-, wið, sam-, for-, to-,* are inseparable; *æt, of, &c.* are rarely separated.

## CHAPTER VII.

### I.—Syntax.

THE A.S. Syntax in general resembles that of Greek and German; but it bears the closest likeness, with some remarkable points of difference from that and other

(\*) See Formation of Particles.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære tíde þa Gotan wið Rómana-ríce ge-winn úp-a-hófon, *at that time the Goths raised up war against the Roman empire.*

þá Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beón wolde, þá wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte for-spillan, *when Darius saw that he should be overcome, then he would lose his life in the fight.*

We sceolon mid biternysse sóðre be-hreowsunge úre móð ge-clénsian, *we must with the bitterness of true repentance cleanse our mind.*

Often, however, sentences are in this and other respects framed as in English; and on the whole this part of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student, and may be better learned from reading than from any rules that might be given.

## II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Nouns of time answering to the question, "how long?" are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan *all the week.*

Þrý dagas, or þrym dagum *three days.*

Answering to the question "when?" they stand in the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

þý feorðan dógore *on the fourth day.*

On þissum geare *in this year.*

Ussa tíða<sup>(1)</sup> *in our times.*

Measure, value, age, and the like, are used in the genitive; as,

Twegra elna heáh *two ells high.*

Ynces lang *an inch long.*

þreora mila brád *three miles broad.*

Sex peninga wyrðe *worth six pence.*

A'nes geares lamb *a lamb of one year.*

The matter to which a measure, &c. is applied, stands in the genitive; as,

Hund mittena hwætes *a hundred measures of wheat.*

Hund-teontig punda goldes *a hundred pounds of gold.*

It sometimes remains unchanged; as,

Twegen marc gold<sup>(2)</sup> *two marks of gold.*

Quality, praise, or blame, stands in the genitive; as,

A'r-wyrðre ylðo *of venerable age.*

Fægeres and-wlitan *of fair countenance.*

Two ablatives or datives are used absolutely like the L. double ablative; as,

Ge-togene þý wæpne<sup>(3)</sup> *the weapon (being) drawn.*

A-fundenum sceápe *the sheep (being) found.*

Two datives, the latter governed by tó, are used like the L. double dative; as,

þæt he ús tó fultume sý<sup>(4)</sup> *that he may be (for) a help to us.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. F. de nos temps.

(<sup>2</sup>) L. stricto telo; ovis repertus.

(<sup>3</sup>) G. zwei mark gold.

(<sup>4</sup>) L. ut nobis auxilio sit.

The means or instrument stands in the ablative or dative, with or without the preposition *mid* ; as,

Hine *mid þý heofon-lícan weg-nyste ge-trym-*  
*mende strengthening himself with that heavenly viati-*  
*cum.*

þý betstan leóðe *ge-glenged adorned with the best*  
*lay.*

Heó hí sylfe *mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-frætwoðe*  
*she adorned herself with royal attire.*

Híg sprecað niwum tungum *they shall speak with*  
*new tongues.*

---

### III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

Adjectives in general, especially those denoting want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, and the like, have a genitive case of the noun which defines them, and often stand after it ; as,

Feos wana *wanting money.*

Freónda leás *lacking friends.*

Hrægles pearfa *devoid of raiment.*

Earn ætes georn *an eagle eager for food.*

Ac ic heora eom swiðe gifre *but I am very greedy*  
*of them.*

Bóca gleáw *skilful in books.*

Un-wís God-cundan Naman *ignorant of the Di-*  
*vine Name.*

Hí næron his ge-myndige *they were not mindful*  
*of him.*

Módes blíðe *blithe of mood.*

Sídes wérig *weary of travel.*

Mægenes strang *strong of might.*

Ísig feðera *icy of wings.*

They sometimes take an ablative; as,

Wintrum geong *young in years.*

Blind bām eágum *blind of both eyes.*

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative; as,

Þeáh he him leóf wære *though he were dear to them.*

Eallum and-feng *acceptable to all.*

Þæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-þensum wære  
*that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.*

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt *useless to every man.*

Derigend-líc býð þe *it will be hurtful to thee.*

Full full, wyrðe *worthy*, scyldig *guilty*, have an  
ablative, dative, or genitive; as,

Full Hálgum Gáste *full of the Holy Ghost.*

Full deádra bána *full of dead bones.*

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes *the workman is  
worthy of his meat.*

Se býð dóme scyldig *he shall be guilty of the judg-  
ment.*

He is deádes scyldig *he is guilty of death.*

Ge-líc *like*, has a dative or genitive; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum<sup>(1)</sup> *they are like the  
children.*

Nán man nis his ge-líca *no man is like him.*

The word which determines a comparative stands be-  
fore it in the ablative neuter; as,

Þrym mundum hýrra *three hands higher.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Thus *L. similes pueris; ejus similis.*



Micle má *much more.*

þýweordra *so much the worthier.*

Comparatives require either þonne or þe *than*, with a nominative, or an ablative or genitive without; as,

Ge synd sélran þonne manega spearwan, or ge synd beteran manigum spearwum *ye are better than many sparrows.*

O'der-healf gear læs þe prittig wintra *a year and a half less than thirty years.*

Se is his mára *he is greater than him.*

Superlatives take a genitive; as,

Ealra wyrta mést *greatest of all herbs.*

---

\*.\* For the Syntax of Pronouns see Chapter IV.

---

#### IV.—Syntax of Verbs.

Verbs, as in other tongues, agree in number with their subject; after ælc þára (þæra) þe *each of them that, every one that*, however, the singular is used, agreeing with ælc and not with þára; as,

Ælc þára þe tó me cymð (lit. *each of them that cometh—*) *every one that cometh to me.*

Swá ge-býrað ælcum þára þe winð *so it befitteth every one that contendeth.*

With a noun of multitude the verb may be either singular or plural; as,

þá com micel mænigeo and tó him éfston *then came a great multitude and hastened to him.*

Transitive verbs in general, as in other tongues, govern the direct object in the accusative case; as,

Lufa þínne nextan *love thy neighbour.*

Seó sá ge-tácnad þás and-weardan woruld *the sea betokeneth this present world.*

A'xian *to ask*, takes a double accusative; as,

Nán ne dorste hine nán þing máreáxian *no one durst ask him anything more.*

Verbs of naming have an accusative of the object named, and a nominative of the name; as,

þone un-ge-met-líce eargan þú miht hátan hara *the immoderately timid thou mayest call hare.*

Rædan *to rule*, a-bregdan *to draw (a weapon)*, and to-bregdan *to cast off (sleep)*, govern the ablative: as,

penden hí þý ríce rædan móston *while they might rule the realm.*

A'n of þám þý sweorde a-bræd *one of them drew his sword.*

Mid-þý heó þá þý slæpe to-bræd *when she then had cast off sleep.*

Verbs of bidding, forbidding, serving, following, obeying, consenting to, opposing, pleasing, trusting, injuring, profiting, escaping from; likewise for-swerian *to for-swear*, cídán *to chide*, árian *to honour*, spare, beorgan *to save, defend*, déman *to judge*, oleccan *to flatter*, \*stillan<sup>(1)</sup> *to still*, fylstan *to succour*, efen-læcan *to imitate*, ge-neá-læcan *to approach*, and heorcnian *to hearken to*, govern the dative; as,

Un-cláenum gástum be-být *he commandeth the unclean spirits.*

Ne for-beóde ge him *forbid him not.*

(<sup>1</sup>) The verbs marked thus \* sometimes govern the accusative.

Ne mæg nán man twám hláf-ordum þeowian *no man can serve two lords.*

Heó him þenode *she served him.*

þa sceáp him fyligeað *the sheep follow him.*

þá se wer hýrde his waldende *then the man obeyed his ruler.*

Gif þú þonne Dryhtne ge-hýrsumast *if thou then obeyest the Lord.*

þes ne ge-þwærede heora ge-þeahte *this (man) agreed not to their counsel.*

Ge þafiað eowera fædera weorcum *ye consent to your fathers' works.*

Him ne wið-stent nán þing *no thing withstandeth him.*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him.*

Eallum his wordum wið-cwædon and wið-wunnon *(they) contradicted and opposed all his words.*

Pilatus wolde þám folce ge-cweman *Pilate would please the people.*

Heó on-gan his wordum truwian *she began to trust his words.*

Ne derode Iobe náht þæs deóflies costnung, a fremode *the devil's temptation hurt Job no whit, but profited him.*

Hú heó þám feónd-lícum gástum oð-fleón *mage how she may escape from the hostile spirits.*

Sið-þán hí feóndum oð-faren hæfdon *when they had escaped from the enemies.*

Ac he sige-wæpnum for-sworen hæfde *but he had forsworn the weapons of victory.*

Gif þín bróðer syngað eíd him *if thy brother sinneth chide him.*

þú nelt árian þære stówe *thou wilt not spare the lace.*

Beorh þínum feore *save thy life.*

Démað him be éowre æ *judge him by your law.*

He wolde him oleccan mid his hearpan *he would flatter them with his harp.*

Y'dum stilde *he stilled the waves.*

Him fylston wel gistas síne *his guests succoured him well.*

Uton for-þý ge-efen-læcan þisum men *let us therefore imitate this man.*

þám deáðe ge-nea-læcende *drawing nigh to death.*

Ypolitus heora wordum heorcnaðe *Hippolytus hearkened to their words.*

Verbs of motion, and likewise on-drædan *to dread*, often have a redundant dative of the subject; as,

Gá þe forð<sup>(1)</sup> *go forth.*

He him hám-weard ferde *he journeyed homeward.*

Him þá Scyld ge-wát *then Scyld departed.*

He him on-dræt<sup>(2)</sup> monigne feónd *he dreads many a foe.*

Wealdan *to wield, govern*, \*on-fón *to receive*, \*milt-sian *to pity*, hlystan *to listen to*, helpan *to help*, \*ge-lýfan *to believe*, wið-sacan *to deny*, ge-feón *to rejoice at*, \*hrinan *to touch*, with its compounds; likewise

(1) Hence "hie thee home," and the like.

(2) O. "I fear me."

wesan *to be*, when implying possession, govern the dative or genitive; as,

Ætla weóld Hunum *Attila ruled the Huns.*

þe on þám dagum ge-weóld cyne-dómes *who in those days ruled the kingdom.*

On-fóh þissum fulle *receive this cup.*

þá on-fengon híg þæs feos *then took they the money.*

He miltsað úrum gyltum *he hath compassion on our sins.*

Ge-miltsa mín *have pity on me.*

Hwý hlyste ge him? *why listen ye to him?*

Hlyste he gódes rædes *let him listen to good counsel.*

He him helpan ne mæg *he cannot help him.*

Ge-help þú earmra manna *help thou poor men.*

For-þám-þe þú ne ge-lýfdest mínum wordum *because thou believedst not my words.*

We ne sculon þæs ge-lýfan *we must not believe that.*

Iulianus his Cristen-dóme wið-sóc *Julian denied his Christianity.*

þry-wa þú wið-sæcst mín thrice *thou shalt deny me.*

Secg weorce ge-féh *the warrior rejoiced in the work.*

Cwen weorces ge-feáh *the queen was glad of the work.*

Ne him hrínan ne mehte fær-grípe flódes *nor might the sudden gripe of the flood touch him.*

þá æt-hrán he hyra eágena *then touched he their eyes.*

þá him wæs manna þearf<sup>(1)</sup> *since he had need of men.*

þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd *the things that are the Caesar's.*

Verbs of desiring, needing, tempting, wondering at, using, enjoying, \*remembering, \*forgetting, caring for, ceasing from; together with cepan *to take, keep, &c.*, wénan *to hope for*, \*neósan *to visit*, on-byrian *to taste*, éhtian or éhtan *to persecute*, oð-sacan *to deny*, earnian *to earn, deserve*, gilpan *to boast of*, fægnian *to rejoice at*, \*on-drædan *to dread*; likewise bídian (bídan) *to bide, wait for*, with its compounds, govern the genitive; as,

We ge-wilniað frides wið eów *we desire peace with you.*

þæs ic wilnige and wisce *that I desire and wish.*

þæt mæden gyrnde deádes *the maiden yearned for death.*

Ne be-þurfon læces þa þe hále synd *they need not a leech that are whole.*

U're man-dryhten mægenes be-hófað *our liege lord requires strength.*

Hwý fandige ge mín? *why tempt ye me?*

For-þón ic his cost node *therefore I tempted him.*

We wundriað þæs wlítan þære sunnan *we wonder at the beauty of the sun.*

(<sup>1</sup>) L. illi hominum opus erat

Eówre fynd wafiad eówer *your foes shall be amazed at you.*

Brúc pisses beáges, and pisses hrægles neót  
*enjoy this ring, and use this dress.*

Ne ge-mune ic nánra his synna *I will remember none of his sins.*

Ne ge ne ge-pencad þæra fíf hláfa? *and do ye not remember the five loaves?*

þú hæfst þára wæpna for-giten *thou hast forgotten the weapons.*

Hí þæs ne gýmdon *they cared not for that.*

Feores hí ne róhton *for life they recked not.*

Héddon here-reáfas *they heeded the war-spoil.*

Ge-swíc þínes wópes *cease thy weeping.*

Sceolde æðeling ealdres linnan<sup>(1)</sup> *the noble must part from life.*

Hí nánre bricge ne cepton *they kept to no bridge.*

He nolde nánnes fleámes cepan *he would not take to flight.*

Ne þearf ic ænigre áre wénan *I may not hope for any honour.*

Ge-wát þá neósian heán húses (*he*) *then departed to visit the lofty mansion.*

On-byrige metes<sup>(2)</sup> *let him taste meat.*

Paulus ehte Cristenra manna *Paul persecuted Christian men.*

Hwá oð-sæcd þæs? *who denies that?*

Séo þeód þe his earnað *the people that deserveth it.*

(<sup>1</sup>) L i n n a n sometimes has a dative.

(<sup>2</sup>) We say also "taste of—."

Hú ne gilpst þú þonne heora fægernes?(?) *boastest thou not then of their fairness?*

Ne sceal he fægnian þæs folces worda *he must not rejoice at the people's words.*

Hig on-dredon þæra Israhela tó-cymes *they dreaded the coming of the Israelites.*

Se hýr-man his ed-leānes an-bíðað *the hireling awaiteth his reward.*

Verbs of granting, likewise tilian *to till, get, for-wyrnan to deny, þancian to thank, stýrian (stýran) to chastise*, have a dative of the person or near object, and a genitive of the thing or far object; as,

Se hálga him þæs ge-úðe *the saint granted him that.*

þá þúhte me hefig-tyme þe þæs tó tidienne *then it seemed to me troublesome to grant thee that.*

þá Metod on-láh Medum and Persum aldor-dómes *when the Lord bestowed the supremacy on the Medes and Persians.*

þá Noe on-gan him ætes tilian *then Noah began to get him food.*

þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces weorðscipes *who denied him not kingly honour.*

Apollonius hire þæs þancode *Apollonius thanked her for that.*

He him þæs þinges stýrede *he chastised him for that thing.*

Verbs of depriving, likewise teón &c. *to accuse,*

( ) neuter adjective used and declined as a noun.



have an accusative of the near object, and an ablative or genitive of the far object; as,

Nelle ic þa rincas rihte be-næman *I will not deprive the warriors of their right.*

Heó hit ne mæg his ge-wittes be-reáfian *she cannot bereave it of its understanding.*

Dyrnum ge-þingum be-togen *charged with secret practices.*

Hwý týhð ús úre hláf-ord swá micles falseð? *why doth our lord accuse us of so great deceit?*

Biddan *to ask for*, has an accusative of the near, and a genitive of the far object; as

Gif his sunu hine bitt hláfeð *if his son asketh him for bread.*

Some impersonal verbs govern the person affected in the accusative or dative: hit is often left out; as,

Hyngrað hine<sup>(1)</sup> *he is hungry.*

Seó swefen þe hine mætte *the dream that he dreamed.*

Hire ge-býrað *it becometh her.*

Hit lícode Herode *it pleased Herod.*

Him þúhte *it seemed to him* (lit. *him thought*).

Ne ge-wearda unc wið ænne pening? *did we not agree for a penny?*

Others have beside a genitive of the far object, after rules for other verbs; as,

þone weligan lyst an-wealdes *the rich lusteth for power.*

Nænne mon þæs ne tweoð *no man doubts of that.*

(1) Comp. G. es hungert ihn; es ge büht ihr; ihm dünkte.

*þe nánre be-hreowsunge ne be-hófað thou needest no repentance.*

*Him þæs ne sceamode of that they were not ashamed.*

### V.—Syntax of Prepositions.

Prepositions, as in German, &c., require various oblique cases of the nouns before which they are placed; thus,

geond <i>through, throughout</i>	ymb(-e) <sup>(2)</sup>	} { <i>round,</i> <i>about.</i>
purh <sup>(2)</sup> <i>through</i>	ymb-útan	
wid-æftan <i>behind</i>		

govern the accusative; as,

*Gá geond wegas and hegas go through the ways and hedges.*

*Purh his micle ge-þyld through his great patience.*

*Wid-æftan þá burh behind the town.*

*Ymb þæs cyninges slege about the slaying of the king.*

*Ymb-útan þone weall around the wall.*

The following govern the dative

be (bi, big) <sup>(4)</sup> <i>of, about, by</i>	in-tó <i>into</i>
of <i>off, from, of</i>	æf <i>ere, before</i>
fram <i>from, by</i>	feor <i>far from</i>
æt <i>at, to</i>	un-feor <sup>(5)</sup> <i>near</i>
tó <i>to</i>	neah (nean) <i>nigh</i>

<sup>(2)</sup> G. durch.

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. ἀμφι, L. amb-, G. um-

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. ἐ-πρ, G. bei; ἀπ-ο, L. ab, D. af, G. ab-; L. ad; G. zu, &c.

<sup>(5)</sup> Lit. un-fer; G. un-fern.

ge-hende <i>near, handy</i>	tó-middes }	<i>amid</i>
æfter <i>after</i>	on-middan }	
búfan }	binnan(*) }	
op-úfan }	wid- }	<i>within,</i>
be-æftan (bæftan) }	on- }	<i>innan }</i>
be-hindan }	æt- }	<i>inside</i>
be-heonan <i>on this side</i>	tó- }	<i>-foran before</i>
bútan (*) <i>without, outside</i>	tó-weard <i>toward</i>	
be-twynan <i>between</i>	tó-eácan <i>besides.</i>	
tó-emnes <i>along</i>		

Be þám heáh-fædere *concerning the patriarch.*

Be mínes fæder leáfe *by my father's leave.*

Far of þínum lande *depart from thy country.*

Of ánre úp-flóran *off an upper floor.*

Æt þám burnan(\*) *at the brook.*

Fram cild-háde *from childhood.*

Gá tó þínum húse *go to thy house.*

Þá híg in-tó þære byrgene eódon *then they went into the tomb.*

Ær sunnan setl-gange *before the setting of the sun.*

He wæs him feor *he was far from him.*

Un-feor þám húse *near the house.*

Neah þám forða *nigh the ford.*

Ge-hende þære ceastre *near the town.*

Æfter þám ge-feohte *after the fight.*

Búfan þære heofenan *above the heaven.*

Bæftan þære mænigeo *behind the multitude.*

Be-heonan þære stræte *on this side the street.*

(\*) D. buiten, O. bout, but.

(\*) G. binnen, S. den.

(\*) S. burn.

Hí comon ofer þá sæ *they came over the sea.*

Micel man-cwealm be-com ofer þære Roman-  
iscre leóde *a great plague came upon the Roman people.*

Under þære fæstnesse *under the firmament.*

Wið-útan his dóm-ern *outside his judgment-hall.*

Wið-útan þám díce *without the ditch.*

Tó-geanes his fýnd he gæð *he goeth against his foes.*

Hí þá ferdon tó-geanes þám hæðenum *they  
then marched against the heathen.*

Feohtende on-gean hine *fighting against him.*

þá com him þær on-gean *then came there to meet  
him.*

Be-geondan Iordanem *beyond Jordan.*

Be-geondan þám mere *beyond the lake.*

For for, and mid<sup>(1)</sup> *with*, govern the accusative,  
ablative, or dative; as,

For eall Cristen folc ge-biddan *to pray for all  
Christian people.*

For þý máne *for that crime.*

For hwylcum intingan? *for what cause?*

Mid þá fore-spreceanan fæmnan<sup>(2)</sup> *with the fore-  
said damsel.*

Mid þý áðe *with the oath.*

Mid his ágenum life *with his own life.*

Wið *against, with, &c.* governs the accusative, dative,  
or genitive; as,

Wið þá reáðan sæ *by the Red Sea.*

Wið þín folc *toward thy people.*

þa assan wið hí læswodon *the asses were grazing  
with them.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. für; *μετα*, G. mid.

(<sup>2</sup>) L. femina.

A'na wið eallum *alone against all.*

Eáge wið eágan, tóð wið téð *eye for eye, tooth for tooth.*

Wið þæs holtes<sup>(1)</sup> *toward the wood.*

He éfste wið þæs heres *he hastened against the army.*

A preposition sometimes stands after its case; as,

Hí him mid sæton *they sate with him.*

Him bi twegen beámas stódon *by him stood two trees.*

It is sometimes parted from it altogether, and placed either next before the verb, or last of all; as,

þe he man-cyn mid a-lýsde *with which he redeemed mankind*

þá ge-nea-læhte him án man tó *then drew nigh to him a man.*

Ymb-útan is sometimes divided; as,

Ymb han-cred útan *about cock-crow.*

Wið and weard are sometimes used, the one before, the other after an accusative or genitive; as,

Wið heofonas weard<sup>(2)</sup> *toward the heavens.*

Wið Petres weard *toward Peter.*

## VI.—Syntax of Conjunctions.

The following conjunctions require the verb to be in the indicative mode:

and (<sup>3</sup>) *and.*

eác *eke, also.*

(<sup>1</sup>) P. holt, G. holz.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. the use of L. ad—versus.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. und, auch, so, da, dann, denn, da—da, &c.

ac <i>but</i>	odde—	
swá, swá-swá <i>so, as</i>	óðer-twega—	} odde { <i>either</i> —or
swá—swá <i>so—as</i>	óðer-pára—	
pá } <i>then</i>	ge—	} ge { <i>as well—as</i> <i>both—and</i>
ponne }	ægðer-ge,	
pá } <i>when, as</i>	náðer-ne—ne <i>neither—nor</i>	
pá-pá }	swá-peáh	} <i>yet,</i> <i>never—</i> <i>theless</i>
(for-)hwý <i>why?</i>	(peáh-)hwæðere	
mid-pý(-pe) <sup>(*)</sup> } <i>when,</i>	ná-læs—ac <i>not only—but</i>	
mid-pám(-pe) }	(for-)pý(-pe) } <i>for, because,</i>	
penden <i>while</i>	for-pám(-pe) }	<i>therefore.</i>
síð-pán <i>since</i>		

The following require the subjunctive, though in general, as in Latin, in subordinate prepositions only:

pæt, pæt-te <sup>(*)</sup> <i>that</i>	od(-pæt) <i>until</i>
peáh(-pe) <i>though</i>	pá-hwile(-pe) <sup>(*)</sup> <i>(the) while</i>
swylce <i>as if</i>	ær } <i>ere,</i>
ponne } <i>when</i>	ær-pám(-pe) }
hwænne }	hwæðer(-pe) <sup>(?)</sup> } <i>whether</i>
hwær } <i>where</i>	sam—sam } <i>(—or)</i>
hwar }	gif <sup>(*)</sup> <i>if</i>
pý-læs(-pe) <i>lest</i>	nemne } <i>unless</i>
tó-pón-pæt <i>in order that</i>	nymðe }
á-pý—pe <i>so much the—as</i>	hú, hú-metá <i>how.</i>

(\*) The particle *pe* is added or not at pleasure to several conjunctions.

(\*) G. *dass*, D. *dat*; G. *doch*, *wann*, *wenn*, &c.

(\*) *Hwíl* is a noun, (II. 3.) *while*, *time*; G. *weile*. —

(?) Answering to *utrum—q*, L. *utrum—q*; like these *hwæðer* is properly a neuter pronoun.

(\*) The conjunction *gif* has no more to do with the verb *gifan* than *S.* *gin* has with *given*, or O. *an* with *unnan*.

Hwæt dó ic þæt ic éce lif áge? *what shall I do that I may possess eternal life?*

Íc wát þæt hit býð sáwl and lic-homa *I know that it is soul and body.*

Þeáh hwylc of deáðe a-rise though one arise from death.

Þeáh-þe ic sceal ealle wucan fæstan though *I shall fast all the week.*

Swylce þú hí ge-sceópe as if thou hadst created them.

Þý-læs þú þínne fót æt stáne æt-sporne lest thou dash thy foot against a stone.

Tó-þón-þæt he his ríce ge-brædde in order that he might extend his empire.

A'-þý un-weordra þe hine manige men for-seón so much the unworthier because many men despise him.

Oð-þæt þú cume tó þám fyrmestan till thou come to the first.

Oð-þæt se A-lýsend com until the Redeemer came.

Þá-hwile-þe ge leóht habban while ye have light.

Þá-hwile-þe he on life býð while he is a-live.

Ær-þám-þe se hana tuwa cráwe before the cock crow twice.

Ær-þám-þe ge hine biddað before ye ask him.

Þonne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest.

Þonne he hám cymð when he cometh home.

Sege ús hwænne þás þing ge-weorðon tell us when these things shall come to pass.

cwædon to him : Nú þíne leorning-cnihtas dóð þæt him a-lýfed<sup>(1)</sup> nis reste-dagum to dónne.

3. And he cwæð to him : Ne rædde<sup>(2)</sup> ge hwæt Daud dyde þá hine hyngrede, and þa þe mid him wæron,

4. Hú he in-eóde on Godes hús, and æt þa offring-hlāfas<sup>(3)</sup> þe næron him a-lýfede to etanne, búton þám sacerlum<sup>(4)</sup> ánum ?

5. Odde ne rædde ge on þære æ, þæt þa sacerdas on reste-dagum on þám temple<sup>(5)</sup> ge-wemmað<sup>(6)</sup> þone reste-dæg, and synd búton leahtre<sup>(7)</sup> ?

6. Ic secge sóð-lice eow þæt þes<sup>(8)</sup> is mærra<sup>(9)</sup> þonne þæt templ.

7. Gif ge sóð-lice wistou hwæt is : Ic wille mild-heortnesse and ná on-sægdnesse<sup>(10)</sup>, ne ge-nidrode ge næfre un-scyldige.

8. Sóð-lice mannes sunu is eac reste-dægcs hlāf-ord<sup>(11)</sup>.

9. Þá se Hælend þanon fúr, he com in-to heora gesomnunge<sup>(12)</sup> :

10. Þá wæs þær án mau se hæfde for-scruncene<sup>(13)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) A-lýfan (I. 2.) to allow ; G. er-lauben. (<sup>2</sup>) Ráðan (I. 2.) to read.

(<sup>3</sup>) Loaves of offering, show-bread ; offering II. 3. hlíf II. 2.

(<sup>4</sup>) Sacerd (II. 2.) priest · L. sacerdos. (<sup>5</sup>) Templ (III. 1.) temple.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ge-wemma (I. 2.) to pollute, profane.

(<sup>7</sup>) Leahtra (II. 2) crime, sin

(<sup>8</sup>) This man.

(<sup>9</sup>) Mære (I.) great, famous.

(<sup>10</sup>) On-sægdnes (II. 3.) sacrifice ; on-segan to offer.

(<sup>11</sup>) II. 2. lord ; said to be from hláf bread, loaf, and ord beginning, origin ; that is, giver of bread. (<sup>12</sup>) Assembly, synagogue ; G. ver-sammlung.

(<sup>13</sup>) For-scrincan (III. 1.) to shrink up, wither away : mark the intensive force of for-.



hand. And hīg ácsodon hine, þus cwedende : Is hit a-lýfed tó hælanne on reste-dagum ? þæt hīg wrégdou<sup>(1)</sup> hine.

11. He sæde him sód-lice : Hwylc man is of eów, þe hæbbe án sceáp, and gif hit a-fylð reste-dagum on pyt<sup>(2)</sup>, hú ne nimð he þæt, and hefð hit úp ?

12. Witod-lice<sup>(3)</sup> micle má man is sceápe betera<sup>(4)</sup> ; witod-lice hit is a-lýfed on reste-dagum wel tó dónne.

13. þá cwæð he tó þám men : A-þena<sup>(5)</sup> þíne hand. And he hī a-þenede ; and heó wæs hál ge-worden swá seó óðer.

## II.—S. Mark, vi. 32.

32. And on scip<sup>(6)</sup> stígende, hīg fóron on-sundron on wéste<sup>(7)</sup> stówe<sup>(8)</sup>.

33. And ge-sáwon hīg farende, and hīg ge-cneowon manega, and gangende of þám burgum<sup>(9)</sup>, þider urnon and him be-foran comon.

34. And þá se Hælend þanon eóde, he ge-seáh mic-ele mænigeo, and he ge-miltsode him, for-þám-þe hīg

(<sup>1</sup>) Wrégan (I. 2.) *to accuse, be-wray.*

(<sup>2</sup>) II. 2. *pit, hole* ; D. *put*, L. *put-eus*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Verily, truly, for, but, therefore* ; a common expletive : from *witian* (I. 1.) *to decide.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Vulgate : " *Quantò magis melior.*"

(<sup>5</sup>) A-þenian (I. 1.) *to stretch out.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Comp. *σκαφη*, G. *schiff*, D. *schip* ; hence also *skiff*.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wéste (I.) *waste, desert* ; G. *wüst*, D. *woest*.

(<sup>8</sup>) Hence *stow* in local names, and *to stow, be-stow*.

(<sup>9</sup>) *Burh* (p. 19—20), G. *burg* (*μυρος*) a (*fortified*) town, *burgh*.

waeron swa-swá scép<sup>(1)</sup> þe nænne hyrde nabbað; and he on-gan hig fela lærau<sup>(2)</sup>.

35. And þá hit micel ylding<sup>(3)</sup> wæs, his leorning-cnihtas him tó comon and cwædon:

36. þeós stów is wéste, and tíma is forð-a-gán<sup>(4)</sup>; for-læt þás mænigeo, þæt hig faron on ge-hende túnas<sup>(5)</sup>, and him inete bycgon þæt hig eton<sup>(6)</sup>.

37. þá cwæð he: Sylle<sup>(7)</sup> ge him etan. þá cwædon hig: Uton gán, and mid twám hundred penigum<sup>(8)</sup> hláfas bycgan, and we him etan syllað.

38. þá cwæð he. Hú fela hláfa<sup>(9)</sup> habbe ge? gáð and lóciad<sup>(10)</sup>. And þá hig wiston hig cwædon: Fíf hláfas and twegen fixas.

39. And þá be-beád<sup>(11)</sup> se Hælend þæt þæt folc sæte ofer þæt gréne hig<sup>(12)</sup>.

40. And hig þá sæton, hundredum<sup>(13)</sup> and fiftigum.

41. And fíf hláfum and twám fixum on-fangenum<sup>(14)</sup>, he on heofon locode, and hig bletsode; and þa hláfas bræc, and sealde his leorning-cnihtum þæt hig tó-foran him a-setton; and twegen fixas him eallum dælde<sup>(15)</sup>.

(<sup>1</sup>) Two accusatives as with *L. doceo*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Lateness, delay*; from *eald*.

(<sup>3</sup>) For *scép* · see p. 5.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Gone forth*; “*far passed*.”

(<sup>5</sup>) *Tún* (II. 2.) *village, town*: originally *enclosure, farm*: comp. *G. saun hedges*; *D. tuin garden*.

(<sup>6</sup>) Comp. *ιδειν*, *L. edere*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Syllan* (I. 3.) *to give, sell*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Penig* (*pening*) (II. 2.) *G. piennig*.

(<sup>9</sup>) *Gen*: see p. 32.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Lócian* (I. 1.) *to look*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Be-beóðan* (III. 3.) *to command*.

(<sup>12</sup>) II. 1. *hay*; *G. heu*. Vulg. “*super viride fenum*.”

(<sup>13</sup>) *By hundreds, &c.*

(<sup>14</sup>) *Abl. or dat. absolute*, p. 75.

(<sup>15</sup>) *Délan* (I. 2.) *to deal, divide, distribute*; *G. theilen*, *D. theilen*.

42. And hīg æton þā ealle, and ge-fyllede wurdon.

43. And hīg namon þæra hlāfa and fixa lāfa<sup>(1)</sup>, twelf wilian<sup>(2)</sup> fulle.

44. Sôð-lice fíf þúsend manna þæra etendra wæron.

45. Þā sona he nýdde<sup>(3)</sup> his leorning-cnihtas on scip stígan, þæt hīg him be-foran fóron ofer þone múðan<sup>(4)</sup> tó Bethsaida, oð he þæt folc for-lete<sup>(5)</sup>.

46. And þā he hīg for-let, he ferde<sup>(6)</sup> on þone munt<sup>(7)</sup>, and hine ána þar<sup>(8)</sup> ge-bæd<sup>(9)</sup>.

47. And þā æfen<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, þæt scip wæs on middre sæ, and he ána wæs on lande.

48. And he ge-seáh hīg on réwette<sup>(11)</sup> swincende<sup>(12)</sup>; him wæs wider-weard<sup>(13)</sup> wind<sup>(14)</sup>: and on niht, ymbe þā feordan wæccan<sup>(15)</sup>, he com tó him ofer þā sæ gangende, and wolde hīg for-búgan<sup>(16)</sup>.

49. Þā hīg hine ge-sáwon ofer þā sæ gangende, hīg wéndon þæt hit un-fæle<sup>(17)</sup> gást<sup>(18)</sup> wære, and hīg clyp-edon;

(1) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, remnant*; lāfan (I. 2.) *to leave*; λαιπειν.

(2) Willa (I. 2.) *basket*. (3) Nýdan (I. 2.) *to compel*; from neôð.

(4) Múða (I. 2.) *mouth of a river*; here *lake*; Vulg. "fretum."

(5) For-letan (II. 2.) *to forsake, abandon*, (G. ver-lassen, D. ver-laaten), and away.

(6) Feran (I. 2.) *to go*.

(7) II. 2. *mount*: we have "a mountain."

(8) Þar=þær, þara.

(9) Ge-biddan (II. 1. *reflect*), *to pray*.

(10) Æfen (II. 2.) *even*, G. abend: -ung (II. 3.) *evening*.

(11) Réwet (II. 2.) *rowing*; rówan (II. 2.) *to row*; D. roeien.

(12) Swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. *swink*.

(13) *Adversus, way-ward*; G. *wider-wärtig*.

(14) II. 2. G. & D. *wind*; L. *ventus*.

(15) Wæcce (I. 3.) *watch*.

(16) III. 3. *avoid, pass by*.

(17) *Unclean*; *fiatle pure, faithful*: fíel-a-ian *to purify*.

(18) Comp. G. *geist*, D. *geest*, S. *ghaist*.

50. Híg ealle hine ge-sáwon, and wurdon ge-dréfe-de<sup>(1)</sup>. And sona he spræc tó him, and cwæð : Ge-lýfað ; ic hit eom<sup>(2)</sup> ; nelle ge<sup>(3)</sup> eów on-drædan.

51. And he on scip tó him eóde ; and se wind ge-swác<sup>(4)</sup> ; and híg þæs þe má<sup>(5)</sup> be-tweox him wundredon.

52. Ne on-geaton<sup>(6)</sup> híg be þám hláfum ; sóð-lice heora heorte wæs a-blend<sup>(7)</sup>.

53. And þá híg ofer-seglodon, híg comon tó Genesaret and þar wicedon<sup>(8)</sup>.

54. And þá híg of scipe eódon, sona híg hine ge-cneówon ;

55. And eal þæt ríce be-farende<sup>(9)</sup>, híg on sæccing-um<sup>(10)</sup> bæron þa un-truman<sup>(11)</sup>, þar híg hine ge-hýrdon.

56. And swá-hwar-swá he on wíc<sup>(12)</sup> oððe on túnas eóde, on stræton<sup>(13)</sup> híg þa un-truman ledon, and hine bædon þæt híg huru<sup>(14)</sup> his reáfes fnæd<sup>(15)</sup> æt-hrinon<sup>(16)</sup>. And swá fela swá hine æt-hrinon, híg wurdon hále.

(<sup>1</sup>) Drefan (I. 2.) *to trouble, offend.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. ich bin es.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. nolite.

(<sup>4</sup>) Ge-swícan (III. 2.) *to cease.*

(<sup>5</sup>) *So much the more ; G. des-to mehr.*

(<sup>6</sup>) On-gitan (II. 1.) *to understand.*

(<sup>7</sup>) A-blendan (I. 2.) *to blind ; blind blind.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Wícian (I. 1.) *to dwell ; see wíc below.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Be-faran=be-feran, p. 55.

(<sup>10</sup>) Sæccing (II. 3.) *sacking, bed.*

(<sup>11</sup>) *Diseased, infirm ; trum firm.*

(<sup>12</sup>) Wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling, village ; L. vic-us : hence wick and wick in local names ; D. wijk.*

(<sup>13</sup>) Strát (II. 3.) *street ; G. strasse, D. straat.*

(<sup>14</sup>) *At least, at all events.*

(<sup>15</sup>) *Ham.*

(<sup>16</sup>) Æt-hrinan (III. 3.) *to touch.*

III.—S. *Lucæ*, xx. 9—25.

9. He on-gan þá þis big-spel<sup>(1)</sup> tó þám folce cwēdan : Sum man plantode<sup>(2)</sup> him wín-geard<sup>(3)</sup>, and hine ge-sette<sup>(4)</sup> mid tilium ( ), and he wæs him feor manegum tídum<sup>(5)</sup>.

10. Þá on tīde he sende his þeów tó þám tilium, þæt hīg him sealdon of þæs wín-geardes wæstmē ; þá swung-on<sup>(7)</sup> hīg þone and ídelne<sup>(8)</sup> hine for-leton.

11. Þá sende he óðerne þeów ; þá beóton hīg þone, and mid teónum<sup>(9)</sup> ge-wæcende<sup>(10)</sup> hine for-leton ídelne.

12. Þá sende he pryddan ; þá wurpon hīg út þone ge-wundodne<sup>(11)</sup>.

13. Þá cwæð þæs wín-geardes hláf-ord : Hwæt dó ic ? ic a-sende mínne leófan sunu ; wénunga<sup>(12)</sup> hine hīg for-wandiað<sup>(13)</sup> þonne hīg hine ge-seóð.

(1) *Parable* : see p. 73. Spel (II. 1.) *story, tale* ; hence *spell*.

(2) *Plantian* (I. 1.) *to plant*.

(3) *Vine-yard* ; D. wijn-gaard : *geard or eard* (II. 2.) *yard, (garden), inclosure, dwelling, country*.

(4) *Ge-settan* (I. 2.) *to furnish, people* : perhaps a mis-translation of Vulg. "locavit ;" we read "let it forth."

(5) *Tilia* (I. 2.) *tiller, husbandman*.

(6) *Tíd* (II. 3.) *time, tide, season* ; G. seit, D. tijd. *For a long time, many seasons*, Vulg. "multis temporibus."

(7) *Swingan* (III. 1.) *to beat, swing*.

(8) *I'del* (I.) *empty, idle, vain* ; G. eitel, D. ijdel.

(9) *Teóna* (I. 2.) *injury, wrong*.

(10) *Ge-wæcan* (I. 2.) *to weaken, injure* : wao (G. weich) *weak*.

(11) *Wundian* (I. 1.) *to wound* : wund (II. 2.) *wound*.

(12) *Perhaps* : wénan *to ween, hope, expect* ; G. wännen *to fancy, &c.*

(13) *For-wandian* (I. 1.) *to respect, reverence*.

14. Þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwædon: Her is se yrfe-weard<sup>(1)</sup>; cumað, uton hine of-sleán<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt seó æht<sup>(3)</sup> úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon<sup>(4)</sup> of-slegene. Hwæt déð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymð and for-spild þa tilian, and sylð þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwædon þá híg þis ge-hýrdon · þæt ne ge-weorde.

17. Þá be-heóld he híg, and cwæð: Hwæt is þæt a-writen is, þone stán<sup>(5)</sup> þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þære hyrnan<sup>(6)</sup> heáfod<sup>(7)</sup>?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt<sup>(8)</sup>; ofer þone þe he fylð, he to-cwyst<sup>(9)</sup>.

19. Þá sóhton þæra sacerda ealdras<sup>(10)</sup> and þa bóceras<sup>(11)</sup> hyra handa on þære tíde on hine wurpan<sup>(12)</sup>; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc: sóð-líce híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tó him cwæð.

(<sup>1</sup>) *Heir*; yrfe (I. 3.) *inheritance* (G. *erb-schaft*) · weard (II. 2.) *keeper*, ward-en, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, beat, slay*; of-sleán *to kill outright*. of- in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Æht* (II. 3.) *possession*; from *ágan*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject*.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Comp.* G. *stein*, D. *steen*, S. *stane*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Hyrne* (I. 3.) *corner*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Heáfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter*: *Vulg.* "conquassabitur."

(<sup>9</sup>) *To-cwystan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *e-queese*, *comp. bar, s-par*; *melt, s-melt*; *tumble, s-tumble*, &c. &c.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Chief(s of the) priests*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Bócere* (II. 2.) *book-man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*.

(<sup>12</sup>) *Or weorpan*; see p. 5.

20. þá sendon híg mid searwum<sup>(1)</sup> þa þe híg riht-  
wíse leton<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt híg hine ge-scyldigodon<sup>(3)</sup>, and  
þæt híg hine ge-sealdon þám ealdron<sup>(4)</sup> tó dóme<sup>(5)</sup>,  
and tó þæs déman<sup>(6)</sup> an-wealde<sup>(7)</sup> tó for-démanne<sup>(8)</sup>.

21. þá ácsodon híg hine, and cwædon: Láreow, we  
witon þæt þú rihte spricst and lærst, and for nánum men  
ne wandast<sup>(9)</sup>, ac Godes weg on sóð-fæstnisse lærst:

22. Is hit riht þæt man þám Casere<sup>(10)</sup> gafol<sup>(11)</sup> sylle,  
þe<sup>(12)</sup> ná?

23. þá cwæð he tó him þá he heora fācen<sup>(13)</sup> on-  
get<sup>(14)</sup>: Hwý fandige<sup>(15)</sup> ge mín?

24. Y'wað<sup>(16)</sup> me áne pening. Hwæs an-lícnesse<sup>(17)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) Searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Who might feign themselves righteous men.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Ge-scyldigan (-ian, see p. 41) (I. 1.) *to accrue*; G. be-schuldigen.  
Scyld (II. 3.) (G. schuld) *debt, guilt*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Deliver him to the chief priests*: Vulg. "traderent illum principatui."

(<sup>5</sup>) Dóm (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, power, &c.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Déma (I. 2.) *judge, doomer, deemer*; hence *doemster* (démestro)  
properly feminine; see p. 66.

(<sup>7</sup>) An-weald (II. 2.) *power*; G. ge-walt, fem. another exception to the  
general rule.

(<sup>8</sup>) Déman (I. 2.) *to judge, for-déman to condemn*: comp. *κατα-  
κρίνειν*; G. urtheilen, ver-urtheilen.

(<sup>9</sup>) The *for* in *for-wandian*, is the preposition, not the prefix; the latter  
is inseparable: see p. 73.

(<sup>10</sup>) Casere (II. 2.) *Cæsar, Emperor*; G. kaiser.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Tribute, gavel*; F. gabelle.

(<sup>12</sup>) *Or*; seldom used independently, but often affixed to other con-  
junctions: see p. 93.

(<sup>13</sup>) III. 1. *deceit, fraud*.

(<sup>14</sup>) *For on-get*; see p. 5.

(<sup>15</sup>) *Fandian* (I. 1.) *to tempt*.

(<sup>16</sup>) Y'wian (eówian) (I. 1.) *to show*.

(<sup>17</sup>) An-lícnes (II. 3.) *likeness, image*.

hæfd he, and ofer-ge-writ<sup>(1)</sup>? þá cwædon hīg: þæs Caseres.

25. þá cwæð he tó him: A-gifað<sup>(2)</sup> þám Casere þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd, and Gode þa þing þe Godes synd.

IV.—S. John vii. 14—28.

14. þá hit wæs mid-dæg þæs freols-dæges<sup>(3)</sup>, þá eóde se Hælend in-tó þám temple, and lárde.

15. And þa Iudeas wundredon and cwædon: Hú-meta can þes stafas, þonne he ne leornode<sup>(4)</sup>?

16. Se Hælend him aud-swarode<sup>(5)</sup> and cwæð: Mín lár nis ná mín, ac þæs þe me sende.

17. Gif hwá<sup>(6)</sup> wile his willan dón, he ge-cnæwd be þære láre hwæðer heó sig of Gode, hwæðer-þe ic be me sylfum spece.

18. Se-þe be him sylfum spicð sécd his ágen wuldor<sup>(7)</sup>; se-þe sécd þæs wuldor þe hine sende, se is sóð-fæst<sup>(8)</sup>, and nis nán un-riht-wisnes on him.

19. Hú ne sealde Moises eów æ, and eówer nán ne healt þá æ? Hwý séce ge me tó of-sleáanne?

(<sup>1</sup>) III. 1. *super-scription*.

(<sup>2</sup>) A-gifan (II. 1.) *to render, restore, give back*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Freols (II. 2.) *feast, festival*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Leornian (I. 1.) *to learn*; G. lernen.

(<sup>5</sup>) And-awarian (I. 1.) *to answer*, governing the dative.

(<sup>6</sup>) *If any one*; comp. L. si quis. (<sup>7</sup>) Wuldor (-er) (II. 2.) *glory*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Sooth-fast, truthful, just*; fæst forms the second part of several compound adjectives.



20. þá and-swarode seó mænio and cwæð: Deófol þe sticað on<sup>(1)</sup>; hwa sécð þe tó of-sleánnne?

21. þá and-swarode se Hælend, and cwæð tó him: án weorc ic worhte, and ealle ge wundriað.

22. For-þý Moises eów sealde ymb-snidennesse<sup>(2)</sup>; (næs<sup>(3)</sup>) ná for-þýg-þe heó of Moises sý, ac of fæderon<sup>(4)</sup>);

23. And on reste-dæge ge ymb-sníðað man þæt Moises á ne sý to-worpen<sup>(5)</sup>; and ge belgað<sup>(6)</sup> wið me for-þám-þe ic ge-hælde ánnne man on reste-dæg.

24. Ne déme ge be an-sýne<sup>(7)</sup>, ac démað rihtne dóm.

25. Sume cwædon, þa þe wæron of Ierusalem: Hú nis þes se þe híg sécað tó of-sleánnne?

26. And nú he spicð open-líce<sup>(8)</sup>, and híg ne cweðað nán þing tó him. Cweðe we<sup>(9)</sup> hwæðer þa ealdras on-giton þæt þes is Crist?

27. Ac we witon hwanon þes is: þonne Crist cymð, þonne nát nán man hwanon he býð.

28. Se Hælend clypode and lærde on þám temple, and cwæð: Me ge cunnon<sup>(10)</sup>, and ge witon hwanon ic

(<sup>1</sup>) On-stician (I. 1.) *to prick, urge on.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Ymb-snidennes (II. 3.) *circum-cision*; ymb-sniðan (III. 2.) *to circum-cise*; part. p. -sniden.

(<sup>3</sup>) Næs (næ) *not*; usually joined with ná.

(<sup>4</sup>) For fæderum; see p. 12.

(<sup>5</sup>) To-weorpan (III. 1.) *to over-throw, cast down, destroy*; L. dis-jicere, G. zer-werfen.

(<sup>6</sup>) Belgan (III. 1.) *to be angry.*

(<sup>7</sup>) An-sýn (II. 3.) *countenance, appearance.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Open (II.) *open*; G. offen, D. open.

(<sup>9</sup>) See pp. 95—6.

(<sup>10</sup>) Observe the distinction between cunnon and witan (p. 61, note 7); *we ye know, and ye wot whence I am.*

eom : and ic ne com fram me sylfum, ac se is sôð þe me sende, þone ge ne cunnon.

V.—*Genesis*, ch. xlv.<sup>(1)</sup>

1. þá ne mihte Iosep hine leng dyrnan<sup>(2)</sup>, ac he drát calle þa Egiptiscan út, þæt nán freinde<sup>(3)</sup> man be-twyx him nære ;

2. And he weóp, and clypode hlúdre<sup>(4)</sup> stefne, and þa Egiptiscan ge-hýrdon, and eal Pharaones hired<sup>(5)</sup> ;

3. And he cwæð tó his ge-bróðrum : Ic eom Iosep ; lyfað úre fæder nú git ? þá ne mihton his ge-bróðru him for ege<sup>(6)</sup> ge-and-wyrdan<sup>(7)</sup>.

4. þá grétte<sup>(8)</sup> he híg ár-wurð-líce<sup>(9)</sup>, and cwæð : Ic eom Iosep eówer bróðor, þe ge sealdon on Egipta-land<sup>(10)</sup>.

5. Ne on-dræde ge eów nán þing, ne eów ne of-þince<sup>(11)</sup> þæt ge me sealdon on þis ríce ; sôð-líce for eówre pearfe me sende God on Egipta-land.

<sup>(1)</sup> This and the following chapter are taken with some alterations from Thwaites's *Heptateuchus*.

<sup>(2)</sup> *To hide* (I. 2.) ; *dyrne* (I.) *dark*.

<sup>(3)</sup> *Fremed, fremd* (I.) *strange, foreign* ; G. *fremd*.

<sup>(4)</sup> *Hlúd* (I.) *loud* ; G. *laut*, D. *luid*.

<sup>(5)</sup> II. 1. *household*.

<sup>(6)</sup> II. 1. *awe, fear*.

<sup>(7)</sup> *And-wyrdan* (I. 2.) *to answer* ; *and-wyrd* (II. 3.) *answer* ; G. *antwort-en*. Ge- is used before no other prefixes but *and-* and *ed-*, as should have been stated p. 41, note 2.

<sup>(8)</sup> *Grétan* (I. 2.) *to grieve, salute*.

<sup>(9)</sup> *A'r-wurð-líce* (II.) *honorable* ; G. *ehr-würd-ig*.

<sup>(10)</sup> *Land of the Egyptians* : comp. *Engla-land*, &c. p. 72.

<sup>(11)</sup> (*Hit*) *of-þince* it *repenteth* : L. *pœnitet* : see p. 86-7.

6. Nú twá gear wæs<sup>(1)</sup> hunger ofer ealle eorðan, and git sceolon<sup>(2)</sup> fífe on þám inan ne mæg náder ne erian<sup>(3)</sup> ne ripan<sup>(4)</sup>.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-healdene, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban<sup>(5)</sup>.

8. Þæt næs ná eówres pances<sup>(6)</sup> ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willan<sup>(7)</sup> hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hiredes hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdre ofer Egipta-land.

9. Farað hræd-lice<sup>(8)</sup> tó mínum fæder, and secgað him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orde eallum Egiptum; beódað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige<sup>(9)</sup> on Gessen-lande<sup>(10)</sup>, and beó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna bearn, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hryðer-heorda<sup>(11)</sup> and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd fíf hunger-gear bæftan<sup>(12)</sup> : dóð þus þæt ge ne for-wurdon<sup>(13)</sup>.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid me is, and ge ge-hýrað hwæt ic tó eów sprece.

<sup>(1)</sup> Has been : see p. 62, note 2.

<sup>(2)</sup> Shall be, are to come.

<sup>(3)</sup> To ear, plough ; L. arare.

<sup>(4)</sup> I. 2. to reap.

<sup>(5)</sup> See p. 73.

<sup>(6)</sup> Of your own accord : see p. 70. Vulg. has "vestro consilio."

<sup>(7)</sup> Through whose will : see p. 31.

<sup>(8)</sup> Quickly ; =hraðe : see p. 25.

<sup>(9)</sup> Wunian to dwell ; G. wohnen.

<sup>(10)</sup> Land of Goshen.

<sup>(11)</sup> Hryðer (III. 1.) ox, rother-beast ; G. rind, D. rund : mark the *n* dropped and the vowel lengthened : see p. 2. Heord (II. 3.) herd ; G. herde.

<sup>(12)</sup> Behind, to come.

<sup>(13)</sup> For-weorðan (III. 1.) to perish ; observe the force of the prefix *for-*.

12. Cýðað mínum fæder eal mín wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egipta-lande: éfstað and lædað hine tó me.

14. And he clypte<sup>(1)</sup> heora ælcne, and cyste<sup>(2)</sup> híg,

15. And weóp: æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecaþ wíð hine.

16. Þá spræc man ofer-eal<sup>(3)</sup>, and wíð-mærsode<sup>(4)</sup> þæt Iosepes bróðru comon tó Pharaone, and Pharao wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beað Iosepe þæt he bude his bróðrum and þus cwæðe: Sýmað<sup>(5)</sup> eówre assan, and farað tó Chanaan-lande.

18. And nimað þær eówerne fæder, and eówere mægða<sup>(6)</sup>, and cumað tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle Egipta gód.

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas<sup>(7)</sup> tó hyra cilda fare<sup>(8)</sup> and tó hyra ge-mæccena<sup>(9)</sup>, and beód him eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hider swá híg hradost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(10)</sup> of eówrum yddisce<sup>(11)</sup>, for-þám ealle Egipta spéda<sup>(12)</sup> beód eówre.

21. Israeles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(1) Clyppan (I. 2.) *to embrace, clip.*

(2) Cyssan (I. 2.) *to kiss*; G. küssen. (3) *Everywhere*; G. über-all.

(4) Wíð-mærsian *to noise, spread abroad*; from wíð and mære.

(5) Sýman (I. 2.) *to load.* (6) Mægð (II. 3.) *family, household, tribe.*

(7) Wægn, wæn (II. 2.) *wagon, wain*; G. wagen.

(8) Far (II. 3.) *going, journey*; hence *fare*.

(9) Ge-mæcca, -e (I. 2, 3.) *husband, wife, companion, mate*; O. *make*.

(10) Vulg. "Nec dimittatis quicquam."

(11) Yddisc *fiend, from etan*; hence P. *eddish, ashen, &c. feed for cattle, after-grass, stubble.*

(12) Spéd *wealsh.*

Iosep him sealde wænas eal-swá Pharao him beád, and fúr-mete<sup>(1)</sup>,

22. And sealde hyra ælcum twá scrúd<sup>(2)</sup>; and he sealde Beniamine fif scrúd, and þreo hundred sylfringa<sup>(3)</sup>.

23. And he sende his fæder tyn assan þe wæron ge-sýmed mid feo, and mid hrægle<sup>(4)</sup>, and mid Egipta welon<sup>(5)</sup>, and tyne þe bæron hwæte and hláf.

24. Witod-lice he let þá his ge-bróðru faran, and cwæð tó him : Ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(6)</sup> be wege, ac beóð swíde ge-sóme<sup>(7)</sup>.

25. Híg foron of Egipta-lande, and comon tó Chanaan-lande tó Iacobe hyra fæder,

26. And cwædon tó him : Iosep lyfað þín sunu, and wealt ealles Egipta-landes. Þá Iacob þæt ge-hýrde þá þuhte him swylce he of hefigum slæpe a-wacode,

27. And þeah he him ne ge-lýfde, híg rehton<sup>(8)</sup> him hyra færeld<sup>(9)</sup> be ende-byrdnesse<sup>(10)</sup> and þá he ge-seáh þa wænas, and ealle þa þing þe him ge-sende wæron, his gúst weard ge-ed-cwícod<sup>(11)</sup>,

(1) "Provision for the way;" fúr (II. 3.) journey; mete (II. 2.) meat.

(2) Vulg. "stolas;" "changes of raiment;" scrúd (II. 1.) garment, shroud.

(3) Sylfring (II. 2.) "piece of silver."

(4) Hrægl (II. 2.) raiment, garment; hence night-rail.

(5) Wela (I. 2.) weal, wealth: pl. riches, prosperity.

(6) Perhaps repeated by mistake from v. 5. Vulg. has here "Ne irascimini:" we "see that ye fall not out."

(7) Mild, gentle.

(8) Reccan (II. 2.) to relate.

(9) Going, journey, or perhaps, how they had fared.

(10) In order, succession: Vulg. "Illi e contra referabant omnem ordinem rei."

(11) Ge-ed-cwícian to make alive again, quicken, cwíc, cuc, &c. quick, living.

28. And he cwæð: Ge-noh ic hæbbe gif Iosep mín sunu gyt leofað; ic fare and ge-seó hine ær-þám-þe ic swelte<sup>(1)</sup>.

# VI.—*Exodus*, ch. xxiii.<sup>(2)</sup>

1. Ne under-föh<sup>(3)</sup> leáse<sup>(4)</sup> ge-witnesse<sup>(5)</sup>.

2. Ne fylig<sup>(6)</sup> þú þám folce þe yfel wille dón, ne be-foran manegon sóðes ne wanda<sup>(7)</sup>.

3. Ne miltsa<sup>(8)</sup> þú þearfan<sup>(9)</sup> on dóme.

4. Gif þú ge-méte þínes feóndes oxan odðe assan, læd hine tó him.

5. Gif þú ge-seó his assan licgan under byrdene<sup>(10)</sup>, ne gá þú þanon, ac hese hine úp mid him.

6. Ne þú ne wanda on þearfan dóme.

7. Fleóh<sup>(11)</sup> leásunga<sup>(12)</sup>; un-scyldigne and riht-wísne ne of-sléh þú.

(<sup>1</sup>) Sweltan (III. 1.) *to die*.

(<sup>2</sup>) This chapter is imperfect in several places, and the 30th verse is wanting.

(<sup>3</sup>) Under-fangan, -fón (II. 2.) *to undertake, receive*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Leás (I.) *false, lying*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Witness, testimony.

(<sup>6</sup>) See p. 42.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wandian *to fear*, &c.: shrink not, decline not from the truth through fear.

(<sup>8</sup>) Miltsian *to pity*; from milde.

(<sup>9</sup>) Þearf (I.) *poor*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Byrðen (II. 3.) *burthen*; G. Bürde: from beran.

(<sup>11</sup>) Fleógan, fleón (II. 2.) *to flee, fly*; G. fliehen, fliegen.

(<sup>12</sup>) Either sing, or plur. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the oblique cases singular in -a. Leásung *leasing, lying*, from leás.

8. Ne nim þú lác<sup>(1)</sup> þa a-blendað gleáwne<sup>(2)</sup>, and a-wendað<sup>(3)</sup> riht-wisra word.

9. Ne beo þú æl-peódigum<sup>(4)</sup> gram<sup>(5)</sup>, for-þám ge wæron æl-peódie on Egipta-lande.

10. Sáw<sup>(6)</sup> six ger<sup>(7)</sup> þín land, and gadera<sup>(8)</sup> his wæstmas,

11. And læt hit restan on þám seofodan, þæt þearfan eton þær-of, and wild-deór<sup>(9)</sup> : dó swá on þínum wínearde, and on þínum ele-beámon<sup>(10)</sup>.

12. Wyrce six dagas, and ge-swíc<sup>(11)</sup> on þám seofodan, þæt þín oxa and þín assa híg ge-reston, and þæt þínre wylne sunu sý ge-hyrt<sup>(12)</sup>, and se útan-cumena<sup>(13)</sup>.

13. Healdað ealle þa þing þe ic eow sæde, and ne swerie ge þurh útan-cumenra goda naman.

14. Þrywa on gere ge-wurdiad<sup>(14)</sup> mínne freols.

15. Þú ytst þeorf-symbel<sup>(15)</sup> ; seofon dagas ge etað

(<sup>1</sup>) *Gifts*, here neuter II. 1., but see p. 9.

(<sup>2</sup>) Gleáw (I.) *skilful, clever* ; G. klug.

(<sup>3</sup>) A-wendan (I. 2.) *to turn away, sub-vert, per-vert* ; G. ab-wenden : the prefix a- sometimes has the force of of-.

(<sup>4</sup>) Æl-peódig (II.) *foreign, strange* ; æl- is here = δαλ-ος, L. al-ius, alienus ; and not to be confounded with æl for eal, in æl-mihtig, æl-beorht and the like.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Angry, cruel*. Vulg. "molestus."

(<sup>6</sup>) Sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow* ; G. sähen.

(<sup>7</sup>) = gear, see p. 5.

(<sup>8</sup>) Gaderian *to gather*.

(<sup>9</sup>) *Wild beasts*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Olive-trees ; ele oil, beám beam, tres ; G. baum, D. boom, whence boom.

(<sup>11</sup>) Ge-swícan (III. 2.) *to cease*.

(<sup>12</sup>) Ge-hyrtan (I. 2.) *to encourage, hearten, strengthen*, from heorte.

(<sup>13</sup>) Stranger, one comes from without ; út-on, see p. 71.

(<sup>14</sup>) Ge-weorðian (wurðian) *to honour, ex-ultate* ; G. würdigen.

(<sup>15</sup>) Feast of unleavened bread.

þeorf, swá ic þe be-beáð, on þæs mondes tíð níwra<sup>(1)</sup> wæstma, þá þú út-fóre of Egipta-lande: ne cymst þú bútan ælmyssan<sup>(2)</sup> on míne ge-sýhðe.

16. Heald þá symbol-tíde þæs mondes frum-sceatta<sup>(3)</sup> þínes weorces þe þú on lande sæwst, and on geres útgange<sup>(4)</sup>, þonne þú ge-gaderast þíne wæstmas tó-gædre.

17. Þrywa on gere æle wæpned-man<sup>(5)</sup> æt-ýwð<sup>(6)</sup> be-foran Dryhtne<sup>(7)</sup>.

18. Ne offra þú þínre on-sægdnesse blóð<sup>(8)</sup> úppan beorman<sup>(9)</sup>, ne se rysel<sup>(10)</sup> ne be-lýfð<sup>(11)</sup> oð morgen<sup>(12)</sup>.

19. Bring þíne frum-sceattas tó Godes húse.

20. Nú ic sende mínne engel þæt he þe læde in-tó þære stówe þe ic ge-gearwode<sup>(13)</sup>.

• 21. Gým<sup>(14)</sup> his, and ge-hýr his stemne<sup>(15)</sup>, for-þám

(1) Níwe (I.) *new*; νεος, L. *novus*, G. *neu*, D. *nieuw*.

(2) Ælmyssæ (I. 3.) *alms*; (S. *awmous*;) *gift* would here have been better.

(3) *First fruits*; fruma *beginning*, sceat (II. 2.) *coin, value, profit, &c.* hence *shot, scot*: G. *schatz treasure*.

(4) Ut-gang (II. 2.) *out-going, end*; G. *aus-gang*.

(5) Lit. *weaponed-man*; the common use of this word for *male* is a strong proof of the warlike habits of our A. S. forefathers.

(6) Æt-ýwan (-ian, -eówian) (I. 2.) *to appear, show, &c.*

(7) Dryhten (II. 2.) *Lord, chief*; dryht (II. 3.) *troop, band*.

(8) Blóð (II. 1.) *blood*; G. *blut*, D. *blood*.

(9) Beorme (I. 3.) *barm, leaven, leavened bread*. (10) II. 2. *fat*.

(11) Be-lýfan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. *b-leiben*, D. *b-lijven*.

(12) Morgen, mergen, merigen (II. 2.) *morn, morrow*; G. and D. *morgen*.

(13) Gearwian *to prepare, make yare or ready*.

(14) Gýman (I. 2.) *to take care of, care for, heed, attend to*.

(15) Stemn = stefn *voice*; G. *stimme*, D. *stem*.



he ne for-gifð þonne ge syngiað, and mīn nama is on him.

22. Ic beo þínra feónða feónd,

23. And þe in ge-læde tó Amorrea lande.

24. Ne ge-eað-méd<sup>(1)</sup> þú hira godas, ac to-brec hira an-lícnessa.

25. þeówiað Dryhtne : ic ge-bletsie eów, and dó selce un-trumnesse fram eów,

26. And ge-íce<sup>(2)</sup> eówer dagas,

27. And a-flýme<sup>(3)</sup> þíne fýnd be-foran þe ;

28. And ic a-sende hyrnetta<sup>(4)</sup>, þe aflýmað Efeum<sup>(5)</sup> and Chananeum,

29. Twelf monðum a'r þú in-fare.

\* \* \* \* \*

31. Ic sette þíne ge-mæro<sup>(6)</sup> fram þære Reádan<sup>(7)</sup> Sæ oð Palastinas Sæ, and fram þám wéstene oð þæt flód.

32. Nafa þú náne sibbe<sup>(8)</sup> wið hira godas,

33. þý-læs híg þe be-swícon<sup>(9)</sup>.

(<sup>1</sup>) Eað-méðan (eáð-) (I. 2.) *to humble one-self, worship, "bow down to:"* from eáð and móð.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ge-ícan (I. 2.) *to increase, lengthen, eke out ;* from eác.

(<sup>3</sup>) A-flýman (I. 2.) *to put to flight, from fleám flight.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Hyrnet hornet.

(<sup>5</sup>) The Hivite ; Vulg. "Hevæum."

(<sup>6</sup>) Ge-mære (III. 1.) *boundary ;* P. meer.

(<sup>7</sup>) Reád (I.) red ; G. roth, D. rood.

(<sup>8</sup>) Sib (II. 3.) *peace.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Be-swícan (III. 2.) *to deceive.*

VII.—*Saxon Chronicle*<sup>(1)</sup>.

\* \* The Saxon Chronicle is a series of annals of A. S. affairs, from the earliest times to A.D. 1154, compiled by Monks.

Brytene<sup>(2)</sup> ig-land<sup>(3)</sup> is eahta hund mila lang and twá hund mila brád; and her syndon on þám ig-lande fíf ge-peóda<sup>(4)</sup>, Englisc, and Bryt-Wylisc<sup>(5)</sup>, and Scyttisc<sup>(6)</sup>, and Pyhtisc<sup>(7)</sup>, and Bóc-leden<sup>(8)</sup>. Æ'rost wæron búgend<sup>(9)</sup> þisses landes Bryttas<sup>(10)</sup> þa comon of Armo-rica<sup>(11)</sup>, and ge-sæton<sup>(12)</sup> súðan-weard Brytene árost.

A.D. 449. Her<sup>(13)</sup> Martianus and Valentinianus on-fengon ríce<sup>(14)</sup>, and rícsodon seofon winter. On heora dagum Hengest<sup>(15)</sup> and Horsa fram Wyrðgeorne<sup>(16)</sup> ge-ladode<sup>(17)</sup> Brytta cyninge tó fultume, ge-sóhton<sup>(18)</sup> Brytene on þám stede<sup>(19)</sup> þe is ge-nemued Yp-wines-fleót<sup>(20)</sup>, árost Bryttum tó fultume, ac hí eft<sup>(21)</sup> on hí<sup>(22)</sup>

(1) Taken with some slight changes from the edition of Dr. Ingram, President of Trinity College, Oxford.

(2) II. 2. *Britain*.

(3) Ig-land, ea-land, (II. 1.) e, *iland*; G. ei-land, D. ey-land: *island* has arisen from a confusion with *isle*, (L. *insula*, G. *insel*, F. *isle*, *fle*) with which it has no connexion.

(4) Ge-peód (II. 3.) *nation*.

(5) Lit. *British-Welsh*.

(6) *Scottish*.

(7) *Pictish*.

(8) *Book-Latin, Roman*.

(9) For búend (II. 2.) *inhabitants*: see p. 15.

(10) Brytte (II. 2.) *Briton*.

(11) A various reading has *Armenia*.

(12) Ge-sittan (II. 1.) *to occupy, settle in*.

(13) Here and below means *this year*.

(14) *The Roman Empire*.

(15) II. 2. Not *Hengist* as commonly spelt; *horsa*, G. *hengat*. Horsa too meant the same.

(16) *Vortigern*.

(17) Laðian (I. 1.) *to invite*, G. *laden*.

(18) Sécan is here *to go to*; comp. the use of L. *petere*.

(19) II. 2. *Place, stead*; G. *statt, stätte*.

(20) *Ebb's-et* in the Isle of Thanet; fleót *stream, creek*; fleet is common in locname.aal

(21) *Again, afterwards*.

(22) *Against them*; in eo

fuhton. Se cing hét hí feohtan on-gean Pyhtas, and hí swá dydon, and sige<sup>(1)</sup> hæfdou swá-hwar-swá hí comon. Hí þá sendon tó Angle<sup>(2)</sup> and héton heom sendan máre fultum, and heom sergan Bryt-Walena<sup>(3)</sup> náhtnesse<sup>(4)</sup>, and þæs landes cysta<sup>(5)</sup>. Hí þá sendon heom máre fultum: þá comon þa men of þrym mægðum Germanie<sup>(6)</sup>:—of Eald-Seaxum<sup>(7)</sup>, of Englum<sup>(8)</sup>, of Iótum<sup>(9)</sup>. Of Iótum comon Cant-ware<sup>(10)</sup>, and Wiht-ware, þæt is seó mæð<sup>(11)</sup> þe nú eardað<sup>(12)</sup> on Wiht<sup>(13)</sup>, and þæt cyn on West-Seaxum<sup>(14)</sup> þe man git hæť Iótena-cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum comon Eást-Seaxan<sup>(15)</sup>, and Súd-Seaxan<sup>(16)</sup>, and West-Seaxan. Of

(1) II. 2. victory; G. sieg.

(2) Engle, Angle (Ongle) (II. 2.) country of the Angles, the present Sleswig.

(3) Bryt-Wala (I. 2.) lit. *British-Welshmen*: the Anglo-Saxons called all not of Gothic race Walan or Wealas, equivalent to *strangers* or *foreigners*, and the Germans still keep up the same idea, calling the French and Italians *Wälschen*, and anything strange or outlandish *wälsch*.

(4) Náhtnes (II. 3.) *goodness for nought, cowardice*.

(5) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence*; pl. cysta *good things, abundance*.

(6) Gen. of Germania; see p. 13.

(7) Seaxa (I. 2.) *Saxon*: the Old-Saxon dialect nearly resembled the A. S.

(8) See p. 19.

(9) Ióta, Iúta (I. 2); the Jutes occupied the present Jutland, which was bounded to the south by Angle; the Old-Saxons' land, now Holstein, lay still further southward.

(10) *Dwellers in Kent*: see p. 20.

(11) = mægð, p. 5.

(12) *Eardian to dwell*, from eard.

(13) Or Wiht-land *Isle of Wight*.

(14) The West-Saxons occupied Berks, Hants, Wilts, Dorset, and parts of Somerset and Devon.

(15) The East-Saxons occupied Essex, as the name implies, Middlesex, and part of Herts.

(16) The South-Saxons had Sussex, named after them, and Surrey.

Angle comon (se á síð-þán stód wéstig<sup>(1)</sup>) be-twyrx Iótum and Seaxum) Eást-Engle<sup>(2)</sup>, Middel-Engle<sup>(3)</sup>, Mearce<sup>(4)</sup>, and ealle Nord-Ymbra<sup>(5)</sup>. \* \* \*

A.D. 596. Her Gregorius Papa sende tó Brytene Augustinum, mid wel monegum<sup>(6)</sup> munucum<sup>(7)</sup> þa Godes word sceoldon bodian<sup>(8)</sup> Angel-cynne. \* \*

A.D. 806. Her se mona a-þýstrode<sup>(9)</sup> on kalendis Septembris<sup>(10)</sup>. Eád-wulf Nordan-Hymbra cyning wæs of his ríce a-drifen, and Heard-byrrht bisceop on Hagustealdes-e<sup>(11)</sup> forð-ferde<sup>(12)</sup>. Eác on þissum ylcan geare pridie nonas Iunii<sup>(13)</sup> róde-tácn<sup>(14)</sup> weard at-eówed<sup>(15)</sup> on þám monan, ánes Wódnæs-dæges<sup>(16)</sup>,

(<sup>1</sup>) *Waste, desert.*

(<sup>2</sup>) East Anglia comprised Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge.

(<sup>3</sup>) The Middle Angles had Salop, Worcester, Warwick, Gloucester, &c.

(<sup>4</sup>) Mercia included the remaining midland counties, together with Chester, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln.

(<sup>5</sup>) Northumbria consisted of York, Lancaster, and the other northern counties: as these were united or divided into two kingdoms, Saxon England formed either a heptarchy or an octarchy.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Very many, a good number.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Munuc (II. 2.) *monk*; G. *mönch*, L. *monachus*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *To announce, proclaim, preach*; hence *to bode*: *boda messenger*; G. *bote*, D. *boode*.

(<sup>9</sup>) A-þýstrian *to become dark, be eclipsed*, from þýstru (p. 10.); þýster *dark*; G. *düster*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Sept. 1.: the Roman name for the day of the month was used sometimes, but not always: see p. 36.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Hexham.*

(<sup>12</sup>) *Went forth, departed, died.*

(<sup>13</sup>) *June 4.*

(<sup>14</sup>) *Sign of the Cross*; ród (II. 3.) *reed, Cross*; tácn *token, sign*; G. *zeichen*, D. *teeken*.

(<sup>15</sup>) *At- for at-*; see p. 4.

(<sup>16</sup>) "*Of a Wednesday*," as we still say.

innan þære dagine<sup>(1)</sup>; and eft on þissum geare tertio kalendas Septembris<sup>(2)</sup> an wundor-lic trendel<sup>(3)</sup> weard at-eowed a-bútan þære sunnan. \* \*

And þý ylcan geare (A.D. 853.) sende Ædel-wulf cyning Ælf-red his sunu tó Rome, (þá wæs þonne Leo<sup>(4)</sup> Papa on Rome) and he hine tó cyninge gehálgode, and hine him tó bisceop-suna ge-nam<sup>(5)</sup>. \*

A.D. 871. þá feng Ælf-red Ædel-wulf-ing<sup>(6)</sup> tó<sup>(7)</sup> West-Seaxna rice; and þæs ymb ænne monað<sup>(8)</sup> gefeaht Ælf-red cyning wið ealne þone here<sup>(9)</sup> lytle werode<sup>(10)</sup> æt Wil-túne<sup>(11)</sup> and hine lange on dæg ge-flýmde<sup>(12)</sup>, and þa Deniscan áhton wæl-stówe<sup>(13)</sup> ge-weald. And þæs gearas wurdon nigon folc-gefeobt<sup>(14)</sup> ge-fohten wið þone here on þám cyne-rice be súðan Temese, bútan þám þe him Ælf-red, and ealdor-men<sup>(15)</sup>, and cyninges þegnas oft ráða<sup>(16)</sup> on-ridon þe man ná ne rímde<sup>(17)</sup>. And þæs gearas

(1) Daging (see p. 67.) *dawn*; dagian *to dawn*, O. *daw*.

(2) Aug. 29.

(3) Round, circle: hence *to trundle*.

(4) Leo IV.

(5) Stood sponsor to him at Confirmation; an ancient custom of the Churches; see the 3rd rubric after Confirmation, and thereon Wheatley, &c.

(6) Son of Æthelwulf; see p. 65.

(7) Feng tó "took to," as is still said.

(8) One month after that.

(9) The Danish host of plunderers was called emphatically "so here" *th. army*; G. *das heer*: see p. 9.

(10) Abl. with a little band: *werod* II. 1.

(11) Wil-tún *Wilton*.

(12) Ge-flýman = a-flýman above.

(13) Wæl-stów *slaughter-place, battle-field*; G. *wahl-platz*.

(14) Great battles, battles of nations.

(15) Ealdor-man (III. 2.) *senator, chief*; hence *alderman*.

(16) Rád (II. 3.) *read, in-read, raid, foray*; from *ridan*.

(17) Ríman *to count, number*: hence *to rime*; G. *reimen*, D. *rijmen*.

wæron of-slegene nigon eorlas <sup>(1)</sup>, and án cyning, and þý geare namon West-seaxan frið <sup>(2)</sup> wið þone here.

A.D. 901. Her forð-ferde Ælf-red Ædel-wulfing six nihtum <sup>(3)</sup> éar Ealra Hálígra Mæssan <sup>(4)</sup>, se wæs cyning ofer eal Angel-cyn bútan þám dæle þe under Dena on-wealde wæs. And he heóld þæt ríce óðer-healf <sup>(5)</sup> gear læs þe þryttig wintra <sup>(6)</sup>.

### VIII.—*Apollonius.* <sup>(7)</sup>

\* \* Translated from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a monkish collection of tales, by whom is not known. This story is the original of the play called "Pericles Prince of Tyre."

Sóð-líce mid-þý-þe þæs cynges dóhtor ge-seáh þæt Apollonius on eallum góðum cræftum swá wel wæs ge-togen <sup>(8)</sup>, þá ge-feoll hyre mód on his lufe. Þá æfter þæs beórscipes <sup>(9)</sup> ge-endunge, cwæð þæt

<sup>(1)</sup> Eorl earl.

<sup>(2)</sup> Namon frið *made peace*: frið (II. 2.) *peace*; G. *friede*.

<sup>(3)</sup> The Anglo-Saxons reckoned time by *nights*: of this our *se'n-night* (seven-night) and *fo'rt'night* (fourteen-night) are relics.

<sup>(4)</sup> *All Hallows' Mass, Feast of All Saints*: *mæsse* I. 3.

<sup>(5)</sup> See p. 36.

<sup>(6)</sup> See p. 35, note 5.

<sup>(7)</sup> From Mr. Thorpe's edition, pp. 17—19, 23—25.

<sup>(8)</sup> Teógan, (túgan), *teón to draw &c., educate*: comp. G. *er-ziehen*; L. *e-ducare* from *ducere*.

<sup>(9)</sup> Beór-scipe (II. 2.) *feast, banquet*; beór (II. 1.) *beer*.

mæden tó þám cyngre: Leófa fæder, þú lýfdest me lytle ær þæt ic móste gifan Apollonio swá-hwæt-swá ic wolde of þínum gold-horde<sup>(1)</sup>. Arces-trates se cyng cwæð tó hyre: Gif him swá-hwæt-swá þú wile. Heó þá swiðe<sup>(2)</sup> blíðe<sup>(3)</sup> út-eóðe and cwæð: Læreow Apolloni, ic gife þe be mínes fæder leáse twá hund punda<sup>(4)</sup> goldes, and feower hund punda ge-wihtes<sup>(5)</sup> seolfres, and þone mæstan dæl<sup>(6)</sup> deór-wyrðan<sup>(7)</sup> reáfes, and twentig þeówa manna. And heó þá þus cwæð tó þám þeowum mannum: Berað þús þing mid eów þe ic be-hét<sup>(8)</sup> Apollonio mínum láreowe, and leogað innon búre<sup>(9)</sup> be-foran mínum freóndum. Þis wearda þá þus ge-dón æfter þære cwene<sup>(10)</sup> hæse<sup>(11)</sup>, and ealle þa men hyre gife heredon þe híg ge-sáwon. Þá sóð-lice ge-endode se ge-beórscipe, and þa men ealle a-rison, and grétton þone cyng and þá cwene, and bædon híg ge-sunde<sup>(12)</sup> beón and hám ge-wendon. Eác-swylce<sup>(13)</sup> Apollonius

(<sup>1</sup>) Hord (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Swið (I.) *strong, powerful; swiðe greatly, very; comp. L. (valide) valde, F. fort.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Blíðe *blithe; D. blijde.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Pund (II. 1.) *pound.*

(<sup>5</sup>) Ge-wiht (II. 3.) *weight; G. ge-wicht.*

(<sup>6</sup>) *A very great deal.*

(<sup>7</sup>) *Precious; deór dear; G. theuer, D. duur.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Be-hátan (II. 2.) *to promise; G. ver-heissen.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Búr (II. 2.) *chamber, bower.*

(<sup>10</sup>) Cwen (II. 3.) *queen; queen is likewise from cwen, which meant originally woman; γυνή.*

(<sup>11</sup>) Hæs (II. 3.) *command, be-hest; G. ge-heisa.*

(<sup>12</sup>) Ge-sund *sound, whole; bade them fare-well; L. valere eos iussurunt.*

(<sup>13</sup>) *So in like manner.*

cwæð: þú góða cyning and earmra ge-miltsigend, and þú cwen lāre lufigend, beó ge ge-sunde. IHe be-seáh<sup>(1)</sup> eác tó þám þeówum mannum þe þæt mæden him for-gifen<sup>(2)</sup> hæfde, and heom cwæð tó: Nimað þás þing mid eów þe me seó cwen for-geaf, and gán we sécan úre gæst-hús<sup>(3)</sup> þæt we magon ús ge-restan.

þá a-dred þæt mæden þæt heó næfre eft Apollonium ne ge-sáwe swá hraðe swá heó wolde, and eóde þá tó hyre fæder and cwæð: þú góða cyning, lícað þe wel þæt Apollonius þe þurh ús tó-dæg ge-góðod<sup>(4)</sup> is, þus heonon fare, and cuman yfele men and be-reáfian hine? Se cyng cwæð: Wel þú cwæde: hát him findan hwar he hine mæge wurd-lícost<sup>(5)</sup> ge-restan. þá dyde þæt mæden swá hyre be-boden wæs, and Apollonius on-feng þære wununge<sup>(6)</sup> þe him be-tæht<sup>(7)</sup> wæs, and þar-in-eóde, Gode þancigende þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces wurdscipes and frófre.

Ac þæt mæden hæfde un-stille niht mid þære lufe on-æled<sup>(8)</sup> þára worda and sanga þe heó ge-hýrde æt Apollonige<sup>(9)</sup>, and ná leng heó ne ge-bád þonne hit dæg was, ac eóde sona swá hit leóht<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, and

(<sup>1</sup>) Be-seón (III. 3.) *to look, look at.*

(<sup>2</sup>) For-gifan (II. 1.) *to give away, present, forgive.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Inn, *guest-house*; G. *gast-haus.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Ge-góðian, *to endow, enrich*; G. *be-gütern.*

(<sup>5</sup>) Wurd-líc (II.) *honourable.* (<sup>6</sup>) Dwelling, *habitation*; G. *wohnung.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Be-tæcan (I. 2.) *to commit, assign*; hence *betake.*

(<sup>8</sup>) On-ælan (I. 2.) *to inflame.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Abl. or dat. formed A. S.-wise from Apollonius; the *g* inserted as p. 41.

(<sup>10</sup>) Light; G. *licht.*



ge-sæt be-foran hyre fæder bedde. Þá cwæð, se cyng :  
 Leófe dóhtor, for-hwý eart þú þus ær-wacol<sup>(1)</sup>? Þæt  
 mæden cwæð: Me a-wehton<sup>(2)</sup> þa ge-cneordnessa<sup>(3)</sup>  
 þe ic girstan-dæg<sup>(4)</sup> ge-hýrde; nú bidde ic þe for-  
 þám þæt þú be-fæste<sup>(5)</sup> me úrum cuman Apollonige  
 tó láre<sup>(6)</sup>. Þá weard se cyng pearle<sup>(7)</sup> ge-blissod<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 and hét feccan Apollonium and him tó cwæð: Mín  
 dóhtor gyrnð þæt heó móte leornian sæt þe þa ge-  
 sæligan<sup>(9)</sup> láre þe þú canst, and gif þú wilt þisum  
 oingum ge-hýrsum beón, ic swerige þe þurh mínes  
 mæces mæгна<sup>(10)</sup> þæt swá-hwæt-swá þú on sæ for-lure,  
 ic þe þæt on land ge-staðelige<sup>(11)</sup>. Þá-þá Apollonius  
 þæt ge-hýrde, he on-feng þám mædeune tó láre, and  
 hyre tæhte swá wel swá he sylf ge-leornode.

\* \* \* \* \*

Þá wæs hyre ge-cýd þe þar ealdor<sup>(12)</sup> wæs, þæt þar  
 wære cumen sum cyngc<sup>(13)</sup> mid his aðume<sup>(14)</sup>, and  
 mid his dóhtor, mid miclum gifum. Mid-þám-þe heó

(<sup>1</sup>) *Early-wakeful*; comp. L. *vigil*.

(<sup>2</sup>) A-weccan (I. 2.) *to awake* (act.) G. *er-wecken*: the neut. is *wacian* (I. 1.) or *wacan* (II. 3.); G. *wachen*. (<sup>3</sup>) *Studies, accomplishments*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Yesterday*; G. *gestern*; comp. L. *hestern-us*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Be-fæstan (I. 2.) *to commit, intrust*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *For instruction*.

(<sup>7</sup>) Pearl (I.) *strong*; *pearle very, greatly*; comp. *swiðe* above.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Blissian to rejoice*; *bliss* (II. 3.) *bliss, joy*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Ge-sælig (I.) *happy, blessed*; G. *selig*: hence *silly*, O. *sely*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Mægen (III. 1.) *power*.

(<sup>11</sup>) Ge-staðelian *to establish, make good, from staðol station*; whence *staðol-fæst stead-fast, &c.*

(<sup>12</sup>) Here used for *chief priestess*.

(<sup>13</sup>) See p. 5.

(<sup>14</sup>) Aðum *son-in-law*.

þæt ge-hýrde, heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-frætwode<sup>(1)</sup>, and mid purpran ge-ecrydde, and hyrþ heáfod mid golde and mid gimmon<sup>(2)</sup> ge-glengde<sup>(3)</sup>, and mid miclum fæmnena<sup>(4)</sup> heápe<sup>(5)</sup> ymb-trymm-ed<sup>(6)</sup>, com tó-geanes þám cynges<sup>(7)</sup>. Heó wæs sóðlice pearle wlitig<sup>(8)</sup>, and for þære<sup>(9)</sup> miclan lufe þære clánnesse hí sædon ealle þæt þar nære nán Dianan<sup>(10)</sup> swá ge-cweme<sup>(11)</sup> swá heó.

Mid-þám-þe Apollonius þæt ge-seáh, he mid his aðume, and mid his dóhtor tó hyre urnon, and feollon ealle tó hyre fótum, and wéndon þæt heó Diana wære seó gyden<sup>(12)</sup> for hyre miclan beorhtnesse and wlite. Þæt háli<sup>(13)</sup> ern<sup>(14)</sup> weard þá ge-openod, and þa lác wéron in-ge-bróhte; and Apollonius on-gan þá sprecan and cweda: Ic fram cild-háde wæs Apollonius ge-nemned, on Tirum ge-boren. Mid-þám-þe

(<sup>1</sup>) Ge-frætwan to adorn; frætu (III. 1.) ornament, fret.

(<sup>2</sup>) Gim (II. 2.) gem.

(<sup>3</sup>) Ge-glengan (I. 2.) to adorn.

(<sup>4</sup>) Fæmne damsel; L. femina.

(<sup>5</sup>) Heáp (II. 2.) troop, heap; G. haufe, D. hoop.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ymb-trymmian to surround, trymmian to strengthen, hence to trim, guard, a garment, &c.

(<sup>7</sup>) To meet the king; comp. G. dem könige ent-gegen.

(<sup>8</sup>) Beautiful; wlite (II. 2.) beauty.

(<sup>9</sup>) = þære; at p. 5, l. 1, it should have been stated that á is sometimes changed to á, as well á to á. (<sup>10</sup>) Dat. of Diana.

(<sup>11</sup>) Pleasing, agreeable, from owuman (ouman) to come; comp. G. be-quem convenient.

(<sup>12</sup>) Feminine of god; see p. 66, and comp. G. gott, gött-in.

(<sup>13</sup>) = hálig, see p. 5.

(<sup>14</sup>) Ern, ærn (II. 1.) house, room; see p. 71, n. 7.

ic be-com tó fullon and-gite<sup>(1)</sup> þá næs nán cræft þe wære fram cyngum be-gán<sup>(2)</sup> oððe fram sædelum mannum þæt ic ne cúðe: ic a-rædde<sup>(3)</sup> Antiochus rædels<sup>(4)</sup> þæs cynges tó-þón-þæt ic his dóhtor underfenge me tó ge-mæccan, ac he sylfa wæs mid þám fúlestan horwe<sup>(5)</sup> þar-tó ge-þeód<sup>(6)</sup>, and me þá syrwoðe<sup>(7)</sup> tó of-sleánne. Mid-þám-þe ic þæt forfleáh<sup>(8)</sup>, þá weard ic on sæ for-liden<sup>(9)</sup>, and com tó Cyrenense<sup>(10)</sup>. þá underfenge me Arcestrates se cyngc mid swá micelre lufe, þæt ic æt nyhstan<sup>(11)</sup> ge-earnode<sup>(12)</sup> þæt he geaf me his á-cennedan<sup>(13)</sup> dóhtor tó ge-mæccan. Seó fúr þá mid me tó onfónne mínon cyne-ríce, and þás míne dóhtor þe ic be-foran þe, Diana, ge-and-weard<sup>(14)</sup> hæbbe, a-cende on sæ, and hyre gást a-let<sup>(15)</sup>. Ic þá hí mid cyne-licum réafe ge-scrýdde, and mid golde and ge-write<sup>(16)</sup> on ciste<sup>(17)</sup> a-legde<sup>(18)</sup>, þæt se-þe hí funde hí wurd-lice

(1) And-git (II. 1.) *understanding*.

(2) Be-gán to exercise, cultivate, attend to.

(3) A-rædan to read, guess; G. er-rathen to guess.

(4) II. 2. riddle; G. räthsel.

(5) Horu (III. 1.) *pollution*.

(6) Ge-þeóðan (I. 2.) *to join*.

(7) Syrwian to plot; searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(8) For-fleón to escape, flee from.

(9) Shipwrecked; líðan (III. 2.) *to sail, for-líðan to sail with ill success, suffer shipwreck.*

(10) Cyrena.

(11) At last.

(12) Earned, deserved, obtained.

(13) A'-cenned = án-cenned only begotten.

(14) Present.

(15) A-lætan = of-lætan to let forth, give up.

(16) Ge-writ (III. 1.) *writing, writ, inscription*.

(17) Cist (II. 3.) *chest, coffin*; P. kist, G. kiste.

(18) Usually -lede; from -lecgan.

be-byrigde<sup>(1)</sup>, and þás míne dóhtor be-fæste þám mán-fullestan<sup>(2)</sup> mannan to féðanne<sup>(3)</sup>. Fór me<sup>(4)</sup> þá tó Egipta-lande feower-tyne gear on heófe<sup>(5)</sup>: þá ic on-gean<sup>(6)</sup> com, þá sædon hí me þæt mín dóhtor wære forð-faren<sup>(7)</sup>; and me wæs mín sár<sup>(8)</sup> eal ge-æd-uíwad.

Mid-þám-þe he þás þingc eal a-reht hæfde, Arcestrate sóð-líce his wíf úp-a-rás, and hine ymb-clypte<sup>(9)</sup>. Þá niste ná Apollonius ne ne ge-lýfde þæt heó his ge-mæcca<sup>(10)</sup> wære, ac sceáf<sup>(11)</sup> hí fram him. Heó þá micelre stefne clypode, and cwæð mid wópe: Ic eom Arcestrate þín ge-mæcca, Arcestrates dóhtor þæs cynges, and þú eart Apollonius mín láreow þe me lærdest! Þú eart se for-lidena man þe ic lufode, ná for gúlnesse<sup>(12)</sup> ac for wís-dóme! Hwar is mín dóhtor? He be-wende hine þá tó Thasian<sup>(13)</sup> and cwæð: Þis heó is; and híg weópon þá ealle, and eác blis-sodon. And þæt word sprang geond eal þæt land þæt Apollonius se mæra cyngc hæfde funden his wíf; and þá weard or-mæte<sup>(14)</sup> bliss, and þa or-

(<sup>1</sup>) (Be-) byrigan to bury.

(<sup>2</sup>) Mán-full wicked; mán (II. 1.) wickedness, sin, crime; mán-swara a man-sworn, perjured man; G. mein-eid, false oath.

(<sup>3</sup>) To feed, nourish, bring up.

(<sup>4</sup>) See p. 81.

(<sup>5</sup>) Heáf, heóf (II. 2.) sigh, groan, grief.

(<sup>6</sup>) Again, back again.

(<sup>7</sup>) Forð-faran = forð-feran.

(<sup>8</sup>) Pain, grief, sore.

(<sup>9</sup>) Ymb-clyppan to embrace, clip round.

(<sup>10</sup>) Ge-mæcca *mate* serves for both genders; thus correct n. 9, p. 111.

(<sup>11</sup>) Scéfan (III. 3.) to shove, push; G. schieben, D. schuiven.

(<sup>12</sup>) Lust.

(<sup>13</sup>) The A. S. dative, like Dianan above and Antiochian below.

(<sup>14</sup>) Measureless, immense; from or- and metan to *mete*, measure; see Additions, &c.

gana<sup>(1)</sup> wæron ge-togene<sup>(2)</sup>, and þa býman<sup>(3)</sup> ge-bláwene<sup>(4)</sup>, and þar weard blíde ge-beórscipe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cynge and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran<sup>(5)</sup> þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þære mægðe on Efesum, heó fór mid hyre were<sup>(6)</sup>, and mid hyre adume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ricce ge-healden<sup>(7)</sup>. Fór<sup>(8)</sup> þá síð-þán tó Tirum<sup>(9)</sup> and ge-sette þar Athenagoras his adum tó cynge; fór þá sóð-lice þanon tó Tharsum mid his wífe, and mid his dóhtor, and mid cyne-licre fyrde<sup>(10)</sup>, and hét sona ge-læccan<sup>(11)</sup> Stranguilionem and Dionisiaden, and lédan be-fóran him þar he sæt on his prym-setle<sup>(12)</sup>.

(<sup>1</sup>) *L. organum*, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(<sup>2</sup>) Lit. *drawn*; from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows. (<sup>3</sup>) *Býme trumpet*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Bláwan* (II. 2.) *to blow*; *G. blähen*.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Gyngre* (*female*) *disciple, follower*, lit. *younger*; *G. jünger* is used in the same sense.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Wer* (*fir*) II. 2. *man, husband*; *L. vir*; *aíor* was the Scythian (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Had been kept for A.*

(<sup>8</sup>) *He, Apollonius went*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Copied probably from the *L. "(ad) Tyrum"* (as also *Tharsum* below); *tó* seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Fyrd* (II. 3.) *army, array, march, &c.*; *G. fahrt journey, &c.*

(<sup>11</sup>) I. 2. *to seize, catch*.

(<sup>12</sup>) *Glory-seat, throne*; *prym* II. 2., *setl* III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius*. Cap. xvii.<sup>(1)</sup>

\* \* King Ælfred translated Boëthius de Consolatione Philosophiæ, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

Hú þæt Mód<sup>(2)</sup> sæde þæt him næfre seó mægð and seó gitsung<sup>(3)</sup> for-wel<sup>(4)</sup> ne lícode<sup>(5)</sup>, bútan tó láde<sup>(6)</sup> he tilade<sup>(7)</sup>.

þá se Wís dóm þá þis leóð<sup>(8)</sup> a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swígode<sup>(9)</sup> he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mód and þus cwæð: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes<sup>(10)</sup>! hwæt<sup>(11)</sup> þú wást þæt me næfre seó gitsung and seó ge-mægð þisses eord-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne lícode, ne ic ealles for-swíde ne gyrnde þisses eord-lícan ríces. Búton lá ic wilnode þeah and-weorces<sup>(12)</sup> tó þám weorce

(<sup>1</sup>) From Mr. Cardale's edition, slightly altered.

(<sup>2</sup>) II. 1. neuter, while G. muth is masculine: another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9.

(<sup>3</sup>) II. 3. *desire, covetousness*; gitsian to covet.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Very well, too well*; for- is sometimes intensive; for-nean well nigh, for-swíðe too much, excessively.

(<sup>5</sup>) See p. 86.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Unwillingly*; see p. 70: láð (1.) *hateful, louthsome*.

(<sup>7</sup>) Tilian (teolian) to toil, till, &c.: see p. 42.

(<sup>8</sup>) III. 1. *song, lay*; G. lied.

(<sup>9</sup>) Swígian to be silent; G. schweigen.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Reason, discretion*; sceadan (p. 54.) to divide, discriminate, &c.; G. scheiden.

(<sup>11</sup>) Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.

(<sup>12</sup>) And-weorc (II. 1.) *matter, material, substance*.

þe me be-boden wæs tó wyrccanne; þæt wæs þæt ic un-fracod-líce<sup>(1)</sup> and ge-rísen-líce<sup>(2)</sup> mihte steór-an<sup>(3)</sup> and reccan<sup>(4)</sup> þone an-weald þe me be-fæst wæs. Hwæt þú wást þæt nán mon ne mæg nánne cræft cýðan<sup>(5)</sup>, ne nánne an-weald reccan ne steór-an, búton tólum<sup>(6)</sup> and and-weorce: þæt býð ælces cræftes and-weorc, þæt mon þone cræft búton<sup>(7)</sup> wyrccan ne mæg. Þæt býð þonne cyninges and-weorc and his tól mid tó rícsianne<sup>(8)</sup>, þæt he hæbbe his land ful-mannod<sup>(9)</sup>: he sceal hæbban ge-bed-men<sup>(10)</sup>, and fyrd-men<sup>(11)</sup>, and weorc-men. Hwæt þú wást þætte bútan þissum tólum nán cyning his cræft ne mæg cýðan. Þæt is eác his and-weorc þæt he hæbban sceal tó þám tólum, þám þrym ge-feráscipum<sup>(12)</sup> bi-wiste<sup>(13)</sup>; þæt is þonne heora bi-wist, land tó búgienne<sup>(14)</sup>, and gífta<sup>(15)</sup>, and wæpna<sup>(16)</sup>, and mete, and ealo<sup>(17)</sup>, and cláðas<sup>(18)</sup>, and ge-hwæt

(<sup>1</sup>) Fracod (I.) *vile, shameful.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Ge-rísen-líc (II.) *fit, proper*; hit ge-ríst it is fit, becoming, = L. deoet.

(<sup>3</sup>) Or stýran (I. 2.) *to steer, guide, govern*; G. steuern, D. steuern.

(<sup>4</sup>) I. 3. *reckon for, give an account of.*

(<sup>5</sup>) *To make known, show forth, practise.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Tól (II. 1.) *tool.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Þæt—búton *without which.*

(<sup>8</sup>) *To rule with*: rícsian, (ríxian); L. reg-ere, rex-i.

(<sup>9</sup>) Mannian *to mun.*

(<sup>10</sup>) Prayer-men, clergy.

(<sup>11</sup>) Army-men, soldiers.

(<sup>12</sup>) Ge-feráscipe (II. 2.) *company*; ge-fera *companion*, O. fere.

(<sup>13</sup>) Bi-wist (II. 3.) *provision, food*: wist *feast*, &c.

(<sup>14</sup>) Búgian=bútan.

(<sup>15</sup>) Gift (II. 3.) *gift*; plur. gífta usually means *weddings*.

(<sup>16</sup>) Wæpen (III. 1.) *weapon*; D. wapen.

(<sup>17</sup>) Ealo (-u) (III. 3.) *ale*.

(<sup>18</sup>) Cláð (II. 2.) *cloth, garment*; G. kleid.

þæs þe þa þreo ge-ferscipas be-húfiad̃: ne mæg he bútan þissum þás tól ge-healdan, ne bútan þissum tólum nán þára þinga wyrcan þe him be-boden is tó wyrcanne. For-þý ic wilnode and-weorces þone an-weald mid tó ge-reccenne, þæt mine cræftas and an-weald ne wurden for-gitene and for-holene<sup>(1)</sup>; for-þám ælc cræft and ælc an-weald býð sona for-ealdod<sup>(2)</sup> and for-swigod<sup>(3)</sup>, gif he býð bútan Wís-dóme; for-þám-þe hwæt-swá<sup>(4)</sup> purh dysige<sup>(5)</sup> ge-dón býð, ne mæg hit nán mon næfre tó cræfte ge-reccan. Þæt is nú hraðost tó secganne þæt ic wilnode weorð-ful-lice<sup>(6)</sup> tó lybbanne þá-hwile-þe ic lyfode, and æfter mínum life þám monnum tó læfanne þe æfter me wæren mín ge-mynd<sup>(7)</sup> on gódum weorcum.

---

Cap. xxxiv. 10.

\*.\* A free translation of part of *prosa ii. lib. III.*

þá cwæð ic: Ne mæg ic nāne cwise wuht on-gitan þára þe wite<sup>(8)</sup> hwæt hit<sup>(9)</sup> wille odðe hwæt hit nille, þe un-ge-néd<sup>(10)</sup> lyste for-weorðan. For-þám ælc wuht wolde beón hál and lybban þára þe me cwise

(<sup>1</sup>) For-helan (II. 2.) *to hide*; G. *ver-behlen*.

(<sup>2</sup>) For-ealdian *to wear out, perish from old age*.

(<sup>3</sup>) For-swigian *to pass in silence*; G. *ver-schweigen*; here and above mark the force of *for*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Usually *sud-hwæt-swá*.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Folly*; *dysig* *foolish, absurd*; hence *dissy*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Worthily, honorably*.

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 1. *memory, mind*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Wite* singular agreeing with *wuht* and not with *þára þe*; see p. 78.

(<sup>9</sup>) *Hit* neut. while *wuht* is fem.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Nédan*=*nyðan*.



pincð, bútan ic nát be treówum, and be wyrtum<sup>(1)</sup>, and be swylcum ge-sceaftum<sup>(2)</sup> swylce<sup>(3)</sup> náne sáwle nabbað. þá smearcode<sup>(4)</sup> he and cwæð: Ne pearft þú nó<sup>(5)</sup> be þá'm<sup>(6)</sup> ge-sceaftum tweógan<sup>(7)</sup>, þe má þe<sup>(8)</sup> be þá'm óðrum. Hú ne miht þú ge-seón þæt ælc wyrt and ælc wudu<sup>(9)</sup> wile weaxan on þám lande sclost<sup>(10)</sup> þe him betst ge-ríst; and him gecynde<sup>(11)</sup> býð and ge-wune-líc<sup>(12)</sup>, and þær þær hit ge-fret<sup>(13)</sup>, þæt hit hraðost weaxan mæg, and latost wealcwigan<sup>(14)</sup>? Sumra wyrta oððe sumes wuda eard býð on dúnum<sup>(15)</sup>, sumra on merscum<sup>(16)</sup>, sumra on mórum<sup>(17)</sup>, sumra on cludum<sup>(18)</sup>, sumra on barum<sup>(19)</sup> sondum<sup>(20)</sup>. Nim þonne swá wudu swa

(<sup>1</sup>) Wyr̥t (II. 3.) *herb, wort.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Ge-sceaft (II. 3.) *creation, creature.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Swylc—swylc answers to L. talis—qualis.

(<sup>4</sup>) Smearcian *to smirk, smile.*

(<sup>5</sup>) Nô—ná.

(<sup>6</sup>) See p. 30.

(<sup>7</sup>) Tweógan, tweón (III. 3. See p. 60.) *to doubt*, from twá; comp. *δου-ζειν*, L. du-bitare, G. zwei-feln, from *δου* (*duo*), duo, zwei.

(<sup>8</sup>) Any more than.

(<sup>9</sup>) III. 2. wood; D. woud.

(<sup>10</sup>) Best: æl good, excellent.

(<sup>11</sup>) Kind, kindly, natural: ge-cynd (II. 3.) *nature, kind.*

(<sup>12</sup>) Common, usual; G. ge-wöhnlich.

(<sup>13</sup>) Where it takes root, draws nourishment, lit. bites: fretan (II. 1.) (G. fressen) *to eat, devour, fret.*

(<sup>14</sup>) Fade; G. ver-welken, P. welk.

(<sup>15</sup>) Dún (II. 3.) *down, hill, mountain*; hence *dun* in local names: G. düne, D. duin, F. dune is a sand-hill near the sea.

(<sup>16</sup>) Mersc (II. 2.) *marsh*; P. marsh.

(<sup>17</sup>) Mór (II. 2.) *moor*; D. moer.

(<sup>18</sup>) Clud (II. 2.) *rock, cliff*

(<sup>19</sup>) Bær (II.) *bars*; G. bar.

(<sup>20</sup>) Sand, sond (II. 2.) *sand*

wyrt, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þære stówe þe  
 his eard and ædelo<sup>(1)</sup> býð on tó weaxanne, and  
 sete on un-cynde<sup>(2)</sup> stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwd  
 hit þær náuht, ac for-scarað<sup>(3)</sup>; for-þám ælces landes  
 ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrtas and ge-lícne  
 wudu tydrige<sup>(4)</sup>; and hit swa déð, friðað<sup>(5)</sup>, and  
 fyrðrað<sup>(6)</sup> swiðe georne<sup>(7)</sup>, swá longe swá heora ge-  
 cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú  
 for-hwý ælc sáð<sup>(8)</sup> grówe innon þá eorðan, and tó  
 ciðum<sup>(9)</sup> and tó wyrt-rumum<sup>(10)</sup> weorde on þære  
 eorðan, búton for-þý-þe hí teóhhiad<sup>(11)</sup> þæt se  
 stemn<sup>(12)</sup> and se helm<sup>(13)</sup> móte þý fæstor and þý  
 leng standan? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan, þeah þú  
 hit ge-seón ne mæge, þæt eal se dæl, se-þe þæs  
 treowes on twelf monðum ge-weaxed, þæt he on-  
 ginnð of þám wyrt-rumum, and swá úp-weardes  
 gréwd oð þone stemn, and síð-þán and-lang þæs  
 piðan<sup>(14)</sup>, and and-lang þære rinde<sup>(15)</sup> oð þone helm,  
 and síð-þán æfter<sup>(16)</sup> þám bogum<sup>(17)</sup>, oð-þæt hit

(1) Nature.

(2) Un-cynde (I.) un-kind, unnatural.

(3) For-searian to fade, become sear.

(4) Tydrían to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring, progeny.

(5) Friðian to make flourish, grow well; frið II. 2. peace, G. friede.

(6) Fyrðrian to further, forward, assist, from forð.

(7) Willingly, readily, earnestly; G. gerne.

(8) Sáð (II. 1.) seed; G. saat, D. saad.

(9) Cið (II. 2.) shoot, sprout.

(10) Wyrtruma root.

(11) Teóhbían to resolve, endeavour.

(12) Stem, trunk.

(13) Crown, head, top, helm-et.

(14) Piða pit; D. pit.

(15) Rind (II. 3.) rind, bark; G. rinde.

(16) Along; like L. secundum.

(17) Boh (II. 2.) bough.

út-a-springð<sup>(1)</sup> on leáfum<sup>(2)</sup>, and on blostmum<sup>(3)</sup>, and on blædum<sup>(4)</sup>? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan þætte ælc wuht cwices býð innan-weard hnescost<sup>(5)</sup>, and útan-weard heardost? Hwæt þú miht ge-seón hú þæt treów býð útan ge-scyrped<sup>(6)</sup>, and be-wæfed<sup>(7)</sup> mid þære rinde wið þone winter, and wið þa stearc-an<sup>(8)</sup> stormas, and eac wið þære sunnan hæto on sumera<sup>(9)</sup>. Hwá mæg þæt he ne wundrige swylcra ge-sceafta úres Sceoppendes<sup>(10)</sup>, and huru<sup>(11)</sup> þæs Sceopp-endes? And þeah we his nú wundrien, hwylc úre mæg a-reccan<sup>(12)</sup> medem-líce<sup>(13)</sup> úres Sceoppendes willan, and an-weald, hú his ge-sceafta weaxað and eft waniad<sup>(14)</sup> þonne þæs tíma<sup>(15)</sup> cymð, and of heora sæde weorðað eft ge-ed-níwade<sup>(16)</sup>, swylce hí þonne wurdon tú ed-sceafta<sup>(17)</sup>?

(1) U-t-a-springan (III. 1.) *to spring, shoot out.*

(2) Leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub.

(3) Blostm (II. 2.) *blossom*; D. bloessem.

(4) Blæd (II. 3.) *fruit, branch*; G. blatt, D. blad *leaf, blade.*

(5) Hneso (I.) *soft, tender, nesh.*

(6) Ge-scyrpan (I. 2.) *to scarf, cover*; sceorp (II. 1.) *scarf.*

(7) Be-wæfan (I. 2.) *to clothe*; wæfels garment.

(8) Stearc (I.) *stark, strong, violent*; G. stark.

(9) See p. 15.

(10) Sceoppend or Scyppend (p. 5.) *Creator*; scyppan *to create*; G. schaffen, schöpfen, D. scheppen.

(11) At least, at all events.

(12) Reccan, tell up.

(13) Fitty, worthily; medeme middling, moderate, meet.

(14) Wanian to wane, from wana went.

(15) The season for that.

(16) See p. 42.

(17) Ed-scaft (II. 3.) *new creation: as if they then became newly created.*

## CHAPTER IX.

---

### VERSE EXTRACTS.

---

#### I.—*Narrative Verse.*

Anglo-Saxon Poetry is of various kinds, distinguished by rime, by alliteration, or by both; the commonest however only, termed Narrative Verse, will be here described. Its chief characteristic is *Alliteration*(<sup>1</sup>), or the correspondence of the first letters of a certain number of the most important words in each line of a couplet, two called *sub-letters* riming thus together in the first line, and answering to a third called the *chief letter* in the second. The first line has often but one sub-letter and never more than two; the second never more than one chief letter. The length of the lines varies much, each however must contain at least two emphatic or root syllables, with one or more unemphatic, that is prefixes, terminations, &c.: few lines have less than four syllables, two emphatic, and two unemphatic, and some

(<sup>1</sup>) Alliteration is found in the Latin poetry of the middle ages, sometimes combined with line and final rime, and syllabic metre; it was used more or less in England along with other kinds of rime till a late period, and is still usual in the Scandinavian tongues. The Vision of Piers Plouhman (1350) is a long and regular specimen of English alliterative poetry, on the above rules. For a full account of the A.S. versification, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 136—68.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example<sup>(1)</sup> :

Hú lomp <sup>(2)</sup> eow on lāde <sup>(3)</sup>	How befell it you on <i>your</i> voyage
leofa Beó-wulf, þá þú færinga feor ge-hogodest sæcce <sup>(4)</sup> sécean ofer sealt wæter, hilde <sup>(5)</sup> tó Heorote <sup>(6)</sup> ? Ac þú Hróð-gære wið cúðne wean <sup>(7)</sup> wihte ge-béttest <sup>(8)</sup> , mærum peódne <sup>(9)</sup> ?	dear Beówulf, when thou suddenly far off determinedst warfare to seek over <i>the</i> salt water, battle at Heorot ? Hast thou then Hróthgár against <i>his</i> known plague ought bootied, <i>the</i> famous prince ?

Here the first couplet has in the first line two sub-letters, the *l* in lomp and lāde, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in leofa in the second. The third line has but one sub-letter, the *f* in færinga which rimes with

(<sup>1</sup>) Beówulf, ed. Kemble l. 3969—79.

(<sup>2</sup>) Limpan (III. 1.) *to happen*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Lādu (III. 3.) *liðan to travel, journey, chiefly by sea*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Sæo (II. 3.) *hence sack of a town*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Hild (II. 3.) *battle, war*.

(<sup>6</sup>) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Danish tribe.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wea *evil, misfortune*.

(<sup>8</sup>) Bétan *to profit, improve, do good to*; bót (II. 3.) *boot, profit*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Though quantity and number of syllables seem no essential part of A. S. versification, many lines will bear a more or less regular scanning; thus most short lines consist either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and spondee like the 10th: the 3rd, and 6th, also might be called imperfect adonics.

that in *feor* in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wid* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period; the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

<i>U'tan ymbe æðelne</i>	Without round <i>the</i> noble
<i>eŋlas stódon.</i>	angels stood.
<i>Eorðan æ'ht-ge-streón,</i>	Earth's possessions,
<i>æppledde gold.</i>	appled <sup>(1)</sup> gold.

In the first example the sub-letters *ú* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub letters are usually double likewise; as,

<i>Frægn from-líce</i> <sup>(2)</sup>	<i>He</i> asked prudently
<i>fruman and ende.</i>	<i>the</i> beginning and end.
<i>Sceán scír</i> <sup>(3)</sup> werod,	Shone <i>the</i> bright host,
<i>scyldas lixton.</i>	shields gleamed.

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *d-appled*, as *asphodel* (O. *asfādil*) has become *d-affodil*; *dappled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-grauw*; comp. F. *gris-pommelé*.

<sup>(2)</sup> From *brave, pious* &c. G. *fromm*.

<sup>(3)</sup> *Clear, sheer*; G. *schier*.

falls only on the first root-letter of the word before which they stand : viz. a-, be-(bi-), ge-, to-, for-, æt, oð, of, geond, þurh ; as,

A-rædde and a-rehte	<i>That he should read and relate</i>
hwæt seó rún <sup>(1)</sup> bude.	<i>what the rune bade.</i>

---

þonne be-hófað	<i>When it behoveth</i>
se-þe her wunað.	<i>him that here dwelleth.</i>

---

þá ge-worhte he þurh his	<i>Then wrought he through</i>
wis-dóm	<i>his wisdom</i>
tyn engla werod.	<i>ten legions of angels.</i>

---

To-sweóp hine and to-	<i>He swept and dashed it</i>
swende	<i>away</i>
þurh his swíðan miht.	<i>through his strong might.</i>

---

þý-læs þú for-weorðe	<i>Lest thou perish</i>
mid þissum wær-logan <sup>(2)</sup>	<i>with these false ones.</i>

---

Se-þe æt-feohtan	<i>Who to fight</i>
frum-gárum <sup>(3)</sup> —	<i>with the patriarchs—</i>

---

(<sup>1</sup>) Rún (II. 3.) a secret, mystery, letter, hieroglyph ; here the hand-writing on the wall : hence to round, whisper ; G. raunen.

(<sup>2</sup>) Wær-loga a breaker of faith ; hence war-lock : wær (II. 3.) a promise, compact, loga a lyer, from leógan to lye.

(<sup>3</sup>) Gár (II. 2.) a (missile) weapon, spear (= L. telum), chief ; it forms part of many proper names, as Gár-mund, Eád-gár Edgar, &c.

þá hie gielp-sceadan <sup>(1)</sup> Since them *those* braggart-  
rebels  
of-gifen hæfdon. had given up.

---

Síð-þán hie feóndum After they *the* foes  
oð-faren hæfdon. had escaped.

---

Geond-folen fyre Filled through with fire  
and fær-cyle <sup>(2)</sup>. and intense cold.

---

Wylm <sup>(3)</sup> þurh-wódon <sup>(4)</sup> They *the* flame had passed  
through  
swá him wiht ne sceód— so that them no whit hurt—

---

Big (bi), on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and some-  
times do not ; as,

And begen þa beornas And both the warriors  
þe him big-stódon. who stood by him.  
Big-standað me strange Stand by me strong com-  
ge-neátas <sup>(5)</sup> rades  
þa ne willað me æt þám who will not fail me at  
stríðe <sup>(6)</sup> ge-swícan. the strife.

---

<sup>(1)</sup> Gilp (II. 2.) *boast* ; *sceaða* *enemy, robber, &c.*

<sup>(2)</sup> Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem* ; in composition it implies *suddenness, danger*, or the like ; fær-líc *dangerous* ; G. *ge-fahr* *danger*, *ge-fähr-lich* *dangerous*. Cyle II. 2. ; hence *chill* ; G. *kühle*.

<sup>(3)</sup> Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. *æstus*) ; welan, weallan *to boil* ; G. wallen.

<sup>(4)</sup> Wadan (II. 3.) *to go* ; L. *vadere*.

<sup>(5)</sup> Ge-neát ; G. *ge-noss*, D. *ge-noot*.

<sup>(6)</sup> Stríð (II. 2.) G. *streit*, D. *strijd*.



þæt we þær eágum

on-lóciad.

On-hycgað nú

hálige mihte.

What we there with *our*  
eyes

look upon.

Think now on

*the* holy might.

And purh ofer-metto

sóhton óðer land.

Uton ofer-hycgan

helm<sup>(1)</sup> þone miclan.

And through pride

*they* sought another land.

Let us despise

the great Supreme.

Eorðan ymb-hwyrft

and úp-rodor<sup>(2)</sup>.

Heofon ymb-hweorfest,

and purh þine hálige  
miht—

Earth's circuit

and *the* upper sky.

*Thou* compassest heaven,

and through thy holy  
might—

And-, un-, ed-, in, tó, &c. are deemed emphatic and therefore rime; as,

Him þá Adam

and-swarode.

Him then Adam

answered.

Un-lytel dæl

eorðan ge-sceafta.

No little part

of earth's creatures.

(<sup>1</sup>) Helm is the *top* of anything; see p. 133, n. 13.

(<sup>2</sup>) Rodor (II. 2.) *heaven, sky*.

Ne hí æd-cerres<sup>(1)</sup>  
æfre móton wénan.

Nor they for return  
ever could hope.

Hæfde þá se æðeling  
in-ge-þancum<sup>(2)</sup>—

Had then the noble  
fervently—

Him þæt tacen weard  
þær he tó-starode<sup>(3)</sup>.

To him that a token was  
where he stared.

## II.—*Metres of Boëthius*<sup>(4)</sup>.

\*\* The following is King Ælfred's translation of  
Boëthius, Lib. III. metr. I.

Se-þe wille wyrcean  
wæstm-bære lond,  
a-teó of þám æcere  
ærest sona  
fearn<sup>(5)</sup>, and þornas<sup>(6)</sup>,  
and fyrsas, swá-same<sup>(7)</sup>  
weód<sup>(8)</sup>,

He that will work  
fruitful land,  
let him pluck off the field  
first straightway  
fern, and thorns,  
and furzes, as also weeds,

(<sup>1</sup>) Cer, cyr (II. 2.) turn; hence *char* a turn of work; *cyrran* to turn, re-turn; G. *kehren*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Adverb formed from the dative plural; see p. 70. Comp. G. *ein-ge-denk* *mindful, thoughtful*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Starian; G. *starren*, D. *staaren*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Chiefly from the Rev. S. Fox's edition.

(<sup>5</sup>) P. *vearn*, G. *farn-kraut*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Dorn*; G. *dorn*.

(<sup>7</sup>) Same is connected with our *same*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Weód* (II. 1.) D. *wied*.

þa þe willað	that will
wel hwær <sup>(1)</sup> derian	everywhere hurt
clænum hwæte,	<i>the</i> clean wheat,
þý-læs he cida-leás <sup>(2)</sup>	lest it gerun-less
licge on þæm lande.	lie on the land.
Is leóda <sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwæm	Is to all people
þeús óðru bysen	this other example
efn be-héfe <sup>(4)</sup> ;	even <i>as</i> needful;
þæt is þætte þinced <sup>(5)</sup>	that is that seemeth
þegna ge-hwylcum	to every man
huniges <sup>(6)</sup> beó-bread	honey's bee-bread
healse þý swétre,	half the sweeter,
gif he hwene <sup>(7)</sup> ár	if he a little ere
huniges teare <sup>(8)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> honey's drop,
bitres on-byrgað.	<i>something</i> bitter tasteth.
Býð eac swá-same	Is eke in like wise
monna æg-hwylc	every man
micle þý fægenra	much the gladder
lídes <sup>(9)</sup> wedres <sup>(10)</sup> ,	of fair weather,
gif hine lytle ár	if him a little ere
stormas ge-stondað <sup>(11)</sup> ,	storms assail,

(1) Wel prefixed is intensive; wel-oft *very often*, wel-hraðe *very soon*.

(2) Cīð *shoot, growth of any kind*; hence *kid*, used either of a child or a young animal: comp. the uses of *imp, scion, sprig, &c.*

(3) Leóde *people, persons*; G. loute, D. lieden.

(4) Be-hófan *to need, be-hove*.

(5) See Additions, &c.

(6) G. honig.

(7) Ilwene, hwon *a little*, S. *a wheen*.

(8) Tear (II. 2.) *tear*; G. trähe.

(9) Líðe *tender, mild, liths*; G. linde: observe the n dropped and the vowel lengthened, and see p. 2, and Additions, &c.

(10) Weder (II. 1.) G. wetter, D. weder.

(11) Observe the force of ge-; see p. 64.

and se stearca <sup>(1)</sup> wind	and the violent wind
nordan and eástan.	from north and east.
Nánigum púhte	To none would seem
dæg on ponce <sup>(2)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> day delightful,
gif seó dimme niht	if the dim night
ár ofer eldum <sup>(3)</sup>	before over men
egesau <sup>(4)</sup> ne bróhte.	terror had not brought.
Swá pincð ánra ge-hwæm	So seemeth to every one
cord-búendra	of <i>the</i> earth-dwellers
seó sóðe ge-sæld <sup>(5)</sup>	the true happiness
simle þe betere,	ever the better,
and þý wynsumre,	and the winsomer,
þe he wita má,	as he more plagues,
heardra hænda <sup>(6)</sup> ,	<i>and</i> hard afflictions,
her a-dreóged <sup>(7)</sup> .	here suffereth.
pú meahst eac micle þý éd	Thou mayst eke much the
	easier
on mód-sefan	in <i>thy</i> mind
sóðe ge-sældea	true happinesses
sweóolor ge-cnáwan,	clearlier know,
and tó heora cýððe <sup>(8)</sup>	and to their country
be-cuman síð-þán,	come afterwards,
gif þú úp-a-týhst	if thou pluckest up

(<sup>1</sup>) Stearc *stark, strong*; G. stark, D. sterk.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ponce (þano) (II. 2.) *thank*; G. dank: comp. L. gratia and gratus.

(<sup>3</sup>) Eld, yld (II. 2.) *man, human being*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Egesa = ege awe, dread.

(<sup>5</sup>) II. 3. from sél, sál *good*.

(<sup>6</sup>) Hænðu (hýnðu) III. 3.; heán *abject, miserable*.

(<sup>7</sup>) (A-)dreógan (III. 3.) *to suffer*; S. drie.

(<sup>8</sup>) Cýððu (III. 3.) *also acquaintance, knowledge, hence kith*.

ærest sona,  
 and þú a-wyrt-walast  
 of ge-wit-locan<sup>(1)</sup>  
 leáse ge-sældā,  
 swá swá londes-ceorl<sup>(2)</sup>  
 of his æcere list<sup>(3)</sup>  
 yfel weód monig.  
 Síd þán ic þe secge  
 þæt þú sweótole meaht  
 sóðe ge-sældā  
 sona on-cnáwan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
 and þú æfre ne recst  
 æniges þinges  
 ofer þa áne,  
 gif þú hí ealles on-gitst.

first forthwith,  
 and thou rootest  
 out of *thy* understanding  
 false happinesses,  
 as *the* husbandman  
 off his field gathers  
 many *an* evil weed.  
 Afterwards I say to thee  
 that thou clearly mayst  
 true happinesses  
 soon recognise,  
 and thou never wilt reck  
 for anything  
 above them alone,  
 if thou them quite under-  
 standest.

(1) (Ge-) wit (II. 1.) wit, loca fold, locker, place shut or locked up.

(2) Ceorl man (fres not noble) husband, churl; S. carl; G. kerl.

(3) Lesan (II. 1.) to gather, pick; hence leas, to glean. G. lesen to gather  
 read; comp. L. legere.

(4) Comp. G. er-kennen.

### III.—*Cædmon* (¹).

\* \* \* *Cædmon*, the Anglo-Saxon Milton, author of the Metrical Paraphrase of parts of the Holy Scriptures, from which the following extracts are taken, was first a herdsman, afterwards a monk in the Abbey of Streoneshalh or Whitby, then ruled by S. Hild: he flourished in the 7th century. For an account of him from Ælfred's version of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, see Mr. Thorpe's preface to his edition of *Cædmon*, and his *Analecta Anglo-Saxonica*, pp. 54-8.

#### Part of Book I. Canto II.

Her árest ge-sceóp  
éce Dryhten,  
Helm (²) eal-wihtā,  
heofon and eorðan,  
rodor a-rærde,  
and þis rúme (³) land  
ge-staðelode  
strangum mihtum,  
Freá (⁴) æl-mihtig.  
Folde wæs þá gyt  
græse un-gréne;

Here first shaped  
*the* eternal Lord,  
Chief of all creatures,  
heaven and earth,  
*the* firmament reared,  
and this spacious land  
established  
by *his* strong powers,  
*the* Lord almighty.  
*The* earth was then yet  
with grass not green;

(¹) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, more literally translated.

(²) See p. 133. n. 13.

(³) Rúm wide, roomy.

(⁴) G. frau (*noble*) woman, lady is connected with fréa.

gár-secg<sup>(1)</sup> peahte,  
 sweart<sup>(2)</sup> sin-nihte,  
 síde<sup>(3)</sup> and wíde,  
 wonne<sup>(4)</sup> wegas.

þá wæs wuldor-torht  
 heofon-weardes gást  
 ofer holm<sup>(5)</sup> boren  
 miclum spédum<sup>(6)</sup> :

Metod<sup>(7)</sup> engla héht,  
 lifes Brytta<sup>(8)</sup>,

leóht forð-cuman  
 ofer rúmne grund<sup>(9)</sup>.

Ræde wæs ge-fylled  
 heáh-cyninges hæð;  
 him wæs hálíg leóht  
 ofer wéstenne,  
 swá se Wyrhta be-beád.

þá ge-sundrode  
 sigora<sup>(10)</sup> Waldend  
 ofer lago-flóde  
 leóht wið peóstrum<sup>(11)</sup>,

ocean covered,  
 swart in eternal night,  
 far and wide,  
 the dusky ways.

Then was the glory-bright  
 heaven's Guardian's spirit  
 over the deep born  
 with great speed:

the Creator of angels bade,  
 life's Distributor,  
 light come forth  
 over the wide abyss.

Quickly was fulfilled  
 the high King's behest;  
 for him was holy light  
 over the waste,  
 as the Maker commanded.

Then sundered  
 the Ruler of triumphs  
 over the water-flood  
 light from darkness,

(<sup>1</sup>) An obscure mythological word; gár (II. 2.) *weapon*, secg *man, warrior*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Black, swart, soerthy*; G. schwarz, D. zwart.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Síd wide*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Won, wan wan, dark*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Holm means also an island in the sea; Steep-holm, Born-holm, &c.

(<sup>6</sup>) Spéd (II. 3.) *success, prosperity, speed*; D. speed.

(<sup>7</sup>) From metan to mete, measure: He who "measured the waters, and meted out heaven."

(<sup>8</sup>) *Bryttian to distribute*.

(<sup>9</sup>) II. 2. *ground, bottom, depth*; G. grund.

(<sup>10</sup>) Sigor (II. 2.) = *sige victory*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Peóstru = þýstru*.

sceade <sup>(1)</sup> wið scīman <sup>(2)</sup> ;	shade from brightness;
sceóp þá bām, naman,	created then for both,
	names,
lifes Brytta.	life's Distributor.
Leóht wæs árest	Light was first
þurh Dryhtnes word	through <i>the</i> Lord's word
dæg ge-nemned;	day named;
wlite-beorhte ge-sceaft!	beauty-bright creation!
Wel lícode	Well pleased
Freán æt frymde <sup>(3)</sup>	<i>the</i> Lord at <i>the</i> beginning
ford-bære <sup>(4)</sup> tíð.	<i>the</i> teeming time.

## Part of Book I. Canto XVI.

þá tó Euan God	Then to Eve God
yrringa <sup>(5)</sup> spræc:	angrily spake:
Wend <sup>(6)</sup> þe from wynne <sup>(7)</sup> ;	Turn thee from joy;
þú scealt wæpned-men	thou shalt to man
wesan on ge-wealde;	be in subjection;
mid weres egsan	with fear of <i>thy</i> husband
hearde ge-nearwad <sup>(8)</sup> ,	hardly straitened,
heán, þrowian <sup>(9)</sup>	abject, suffer <i>for</i>
þínra dæda ge-dwild <sup>(10)</sup> —	thy deeds' error—

(<sup>1</sup>) For *sceadwe*; *sceadu* (-o) (II. 2.) G. *schatte*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Scīma* light, *skimmer*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Frymð* (II. 2.)

(<sup>4</sup>) Lit. *forth-bearing*.

(<sup>5</sup>) See p. 70—1; from *yrr* (II. 2.) *ire, anger*; L. *ira*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Wendan* to turn, *wend, go*; G. *wenden*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Wyn* (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. *wonne*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Ge-nearwian*, from *nearu* to make narrow, *afflict, oppress*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Hence *thros*.

(<sup>10</sup>) II. 3. *dwelian* to err.



deaðes bídán;	death abide;
and þurh wóp <sup>(1)</sup> and heáf,	and through weeping and
	moan,
on woruld cennan <sup>(2)</sup> ,	into <i>the</i> world bear,
þurh sár <sup>(3)</sup> micel,	through much pain,
sunu and dúhtor.	son and daughter.
A-beád eác Adame	Announced eke to Adam
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
lifes Leóht-fruma,	Author of life's light,
lād ærende <sup>(4)</sup> :	<i>the</i> dire errand:
þú scealt óðerne	Thou shalt another
éðel <sup>(5)</sup> sécean,	country seek,
wyn-leásran wíc,	a joyless dwelling,
and on wræc <sup>(6)</sup> hweorf-	and into exile go,
an <sup>(7)</sup> ,	
nacod <sup>(8)</sup> , nîed-wædla <sup>(9)</sup> ,	naked, a needy beggar,
neorxna-wanges <sup>(10)</sup>	of Paradise's
dúgedum be-dæled:	blessings deprived:
þe is ge-dál witod <sup>(11)</sup>	to thee is a parting de-
	creed
líces <sup>(12)</sup> and sáwle.	of body and soul.

(1) II. 2. hence *whoop*.(2) I. 2. comp. γένειν, L. *genere*; hence to *kindle*.(3) II. 1. *sore*.(4) III. 1. from *an* messenger.(5) II. 2. native country, *home*.

(6) II. 3.

(7) III. 1. to turn, return, go.

(8) G. *nackt*.

(9) Nîed = neód.

(10) Neorxna-wang (II. 2.) a word of doubtful etymology; wang is plain, field.

(11) Witian to decide, decree; hence witod-líce.

(12) Líc (II. 1.) *corpus*, dead body; G. leich, D. lijk: hence lich-gate to a Churchyard, like-wake watching a *corpus*, &c.

Hwæt! þú lād-líce  
wróhte<sup>(1)</sup> on-stealdest;  
for-þón þú winnan<sup>(2)</sup>  
scealt,

and on eorðan þe  
þíne and-lífne<sup>(3)</sup>  
selfa ge-ræcan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
wegan<sup>(5)</sup> swátig<sup>(6)</sup>  
hleor<sup>(7)</sup>,

þínne hláf etan,  
þenden þú her leofast,  
oð-þæt þe tó heortan  
hearde grípeð<sup>(8)</sup>  
aðl<sup>(9)</sup> un-líðe,  
þe þú on æple<sup>(10)</sup> ær

selfa for-swulge<sup>(11)</sup>;  
for-þón þú sweltan scealt.  
Hwæt! we nú ge-hýrað

Lo! thou foully  
crime didst commit;  
therefore thou shalt la-  
bour,

and on earth to thee  
thy livelihood  
thyself obtain,  
wear a sweaty face,

thy bread eat,  
while thou here livest,  
until thee at heart  
hardly gripeth  
ungentle ailment,  
which thou in *the* apple  
erst

thyself swallowedst down;  
therefore thou shalt die.  
Lo! we now hear

(<sup>1</sup>) Wróht (II. 3.); wrégan to accuse; comp. L. crimen.

(<sup>2</sup>) Winnan (III. 1.) to battle, struggle, toil, also to win; ge-winn labour, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) And-lifa II. 3.

(<sup>4</sup>) I. 2. lit. reach; G. reichen, D. reiken.

(<sup>5</sup>) II. 1. to wag, move, bear; hence wæg wry (weight), wæg waze, wægn wagon.

(<sup>6</sup>) Swát (II. 2.) sweat; G. schweiss, D. sweet.

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 1. jaw, cheek; hence countenance, complexion, O. lera.

(<sup>8</sup>) Grípan (III. 2.) G. greifen, D. grijpen.

(<sup>9</sup>) II. 3. ail, disease.

(<sup>10</sup>) Æpl, æppel (II. 2.) G. apfel, D. appel.

(<sup>11</sup>) For-swelgan (III. 1.) to devour; G. ver-schwelgen.

hwær ús hearm-stafas <sup>(1)</sup>	where to us sorrow
wræde <sup>(2)</sup> on-wúcon <sup>(3)</sup> ,	in wrath up-sprang
and woruld-yrmdo <sup>(4)</sup> .	and worldly misery.
Hie þá wuldres Weard	Them then glory's Keeper
wædum <sup>(5)</sup> gyrede,	with weeds provided,
Scyppend ússer,	our Creator,
hét heora sceome <sup>(6)</sup> þecc-	bade their shame hide,
an,	
Freá, frum-hrægle;	<i>the</i> Lord, with <i>the</i> first
	garment;
hét hie from-hweorfan	bade them depart from
neorxna-wange	Paradise
on nearore lif.	into a narrower life.
Him on laste <sup>(7)</sup> be-leác <sup>(8)</sup>	Behind them locked up
líðra and wynna	of comforts and joys
hyht-fulne <sup>(9)</sup> hám,	<i>the</i> hopeful home,
hálig engel,	a holy angel,
be Freán háse,	by <i>his</i> Lord's behest,
fýrene <sup>(10)</sup> sweorde.	with fiery sword.
Ne mæg þær iuwit-ful <sup>(11)</sup>	May not there guileful
énig ge-feran,	any journey,

(<sup>1</sup>) *Hearm* (II. 2.) *grief, harm, calamity*; G. *harm*. *Stafas* (plur. of *staf*) forms the second part of several poetical compounds; as, *ende-stafas end*, *ár-stafas honour*, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Wræð* II. 3.

(<sup>3</sup>) *On-wacan* (II. 3.) *to awake, arise, be born*.

(<sup>4</sup>) III. 3. from *earn poor*.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Wæd* (III. 1.) *weed, garment*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Sceamu* (III. 3.) G. *scham*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Last* (II. 2.) *footstep*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Be-lúcan* III. 3.

(<sup>9</sup>) *Hyht* (II. 3.) *hope*.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Fýren of fire*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Lauit* (II. 1.) *deceit, treachery*.

wom-scyldig<sup>(1)</sup> mon;  
 ac se weard hafað  
 miht and strengðo<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 se þæt mære lif  
 dúgedum<sup>(3)</sup> deóre,  
 Dryhtne healdæ.  
 Nô hwæðre Æl-mihtig

ealra wolde  
 Adam and Euan  
 árna<sup>(4)</sup> of-teón,  
 Fæder æt Frymde,

þeah he him from-  
 swice<sup>(5)</sup>;  
 ac he him tó frófre let

hwæðre forð-wesan  
 hyrstedne<sup>(6)</sup> hróf<sup>(7)</sup>  
 hálgum tunglum<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 and him grund-welan<sup>(9)</sup>  
 ginne sealde;

stain-guilty man,  
 but the keeper hath  
 might and strength,  
 who that exalted life  
 to *the* good dear,  
 for *the* Lord holdeth.  
 Not however *the* Al-  
 mighty  
 of all would  
 Adam and Eve  
 means deprive,  
*the* Father from *the* be-  
 ginning,  
 though he from them had  
 withdrawn;  
 but he to them for solace  
 let  
 nevertheless continue forth  
*the* adorned roof  
 with holy stars,  
 and them earth-riches  
 ample gave;

(<sup>1</sup>) Wom (II. 2.) *spot, defilement.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Strengðo (-u) (III. 3.) = strengð II. 3.

(<sup>3</sup>) Dúguð (II. 3.) *virtus, benefit, nobility, chief men; from dugan.*

(<sup>4</sup>) A'r (II. 3.) *honour, wealth, &c.; nouns of this class sometimes have a simple or weak genitive plural.*

(<sup>5</sup>) Swican (III. 2.) *to cease, depart from.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Tungel (III. 1.) *heavenly body.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Wela *weal, wealth.*

(<sup>9</sup>) II. 2. D. roof.

hét þám sin-híwum <sup>(1)</sup>	bade the pairs
sæs and eorðan	of sea and earth
tuddor teóndra <sup>(2)</sup> ,	producing offspring,
teóhha <sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwylces	of every substance
tó woruld-nytte <sup>(4)</sup>	to worldly use
wæstmas fédan <sup>(5)</sup> .	fruits bring forth.
Ge-sæton þá æfter synne	<i>They</i> occupied then after <i>their</i> sin
sorg-fulre land,	a sorrowfuller land,
eard and éðel	a dwelling and home
un-spédigran <sup>(6)</sup>	more barren
fremena <sup>(7)</sup> ge-hwylcre	of every good thing
þonne se frum-stól <sup>(8)</sup> wæs	than the first seat was
þe hie æfter dæde	which they after <i>that</i> deed
of-a-drifen wurden.	were driven from.

<sup>(1)</sup> Sin-híwa mate, partner.<sup>(2)</sup> Teón to draw, pro-duce.<sup>(3)</sup> Teóh (teóg) III. 1. stuff, material; G. saug.<sup>(4)</sup> Nýt (II. 3.) G. nuts, D. nut.<sup>(5)</sup> Comp. L. fet-us, &c.<sup>(6)</sup> Spédig wealthy.<sup>(7)</sup> Fremme (I. 3.) advantage, benefit.<sup>(8)</sup> Stól (II. 2.) G. stuhl, D. stool; hence stool.

IV.—*Beowulf*<sup>(1)</sup>.

\* \* The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beowulf, King of the Weder-Geats or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V.<sup>(2)</sup>

Stræt <sup>(3)</sup> wæs stán-fáh,	<i>The street was variegated</i>
	<i>with stones,</i>
stíg <sup>(4)</sup> wísode <sup>(5)</sup>	<i>the path guided</i>
gumum æt-gædere;	<i>the men together;</i>
gúð-byrne <sup>(6)</sup> scán,	<i>the war-corslet shone,</i>
heard, hond-locen <sup>(7)</sup> ;	<i>hard, hand-locked;</i>
hring-íren <sup>(8)</sup> scír	<i>the ring-iron bright</i>
song in searwum <sup>(9)</sup> ,	<i>sang in their trappings,</i>
pá hie tó sele <sup>(10)</sup> furdum,	<i>when they to the hall for-</i>
	<i>ward,</i>

(<sup>1</sup>) From Mr. Kemble's edition; the translation has been adapted to read line by line. (<sup>2</sup>) Line 637—676.

(<sup>3</sup>) II. 3. L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

(<sup>4</sup>) II. 3. G. steig, hence stígan to go, mount.

(<sup>5</sup>) Wíseian to show, direct, governing the dative; G. weisen.

(<sup>6</sup>) Gúð II. 3.; byrne (I. 3.) O. birnie.

(<sup>7</sup>) Claspèd, closèd by the hand.

(<sup>8</sup>) Hring (II. 2.) G. ring: íren (ísen) (III. 1.) G. eisen. The corslet was of ring or chain mail.

(<sup>9</sup>) Searu (III. 1.) equipment, chiefly for war.

(<sup>10</sup>) II. 2. L. aula, G. saal, F. salle.

in hyra grýre-geatwum <sup>(1)</sup> ,	in their terrible harness,
gangan cwomon.	proceeded to go.
Setton sæ-méde <sup>(2)</sup>	<i>The</i> sea-weary men set
síde scyldas,	<i>their</i> wide shields,
rondas <sup>(3)</sup> regn-hearde <sup>(4)</sup> ,	<i>their</i> very hard bucklers,
wið þæs recedes weal.	by the house wall.
Bugon þá tó bence,	<i>They</i> turned then to a
	bench,
byrnan hringdon,	<i>their</i> corselets laid in a
	ring,
gúd-searo gumena;	<i>the</i> war-trapping of men:
gáras stódon	<i>their</i> javelins stood
sæ-manna searo	sea-men's arms
samod æt-gædere,	all together,
æsc-holt <sup>(5)</sup> úfan græg <sup>(6)</sup> :	ash-wood above gray:
wæs se íren-þreát	the iron-crowd was
wæpnum ge-wurdad.	by <i>the</i> weapons honoured.
þá þær wlonc hæled <sup>(7)</sup>	Then there a proud war-
	rrior
oret-mecgas <sup>(8)</sup>	<i>the</i> sons of battle
æfter hæledum frægn:	after <i>the</i> heroes asked:
Hwanon ferigeað ge	Whence bear ye

(<sup>1</sup>) Grýre (II. 2.) *horror*; comp. G. es grauet, O. it grewa. Geatwe (ge-tawe) (I. 3.) = searu.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. müde.

(<sup>3</sup>) Rand (rond) *edge* (G. rand), *shield*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Regen- is an intensive prefix.

(<sup>5</sup>) Æsc (II. 3.) G. esche; holt (II. 1.) *holt*; G. holz, D. holt.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. grau.

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 2. G. held.

(<sup>8</sup>) Mecg (mæg) *kins-man, son, man*, connected with mæg, and maga, and all with Mac-

fætte scyldas,	<i>your thick shields,</i>
græge syrcan <sup>(1)</sup> ,	<i>gray shirts,</i>
and grim-helmas <sup>(2)</sup> ,	<i>and visor-helms,</i>
here-sceafta <sup>(3)</sup> heáp?	<i>your war-shafts' heap?</i>
Ic eom Hrôð-gáres	<i>I am Hróthgár's</i>
ar and om-biht <sup>(4)</sup> :	<i>messenger and servant:</i>
ne seáh ic el-peóðige	<i>never saw I foreign</i>
þus manige men	<i>thus many men</i>
móðig-licran:	<i>haughtier:</i>
wén <sup>(5)</sup> is þæt ge for	<i>I ween that ye for pride,</i>
wlenco <sup>(6)</sup> ,	
nalles for wræc-síðum <sup>(7)</sup>	<i>not for exile</i>
ac for hyge-þrymmum <sup>(8)</sup> ,	<i>but for magnanimity,</i>
Hrôð-gár sóhton.	<i>have sought Hróthgár.</i>

---

Part of Canto XXII.<sup>(9)</sup>

Beó-wulf maðelode <sup>(10)</sup> ,	Beówulf harangued,
bearn Ecg-peówes:	son of Ecgtheów:
Ge-penc nú se mæra	Consider now <i>thou</i> the
	famous
maga Healf-denes,	son of Healfdene,

(<sup>1</sup>) Syrce (I. 3.) S. sark; *gray shirts of iron chain-mail.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Grime (II. 2.) *mask, part of the helmet covering the face.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Sceaft (II. 2.) G. shaft.

(<sup>4</sup>) Om-(am-) bihtu *office*; G. amt.

(<sup>5</sup>) (II. 3.) *hope, expectation*: wén *is there is reason to suppose.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Wlenco (III. 3.) from wlane *proud.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Wræc (II. 3.) *exile, &c.*; síð *journey.*

(<sup>8</sup>) Hyge (II. 2.) *mind*, hycgan (hogian) *to think*; þrym (II. 2.) *glory.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Line 2945—2998.

(<sup>10</sup>) Meðel (II. 1.) *discourse, speech.*



snottra <sup>(1)</sup> fengel,	prudent chief,
nú ic eom sídes fús,	now I am ready to de-
	part,
gold-wine <sup>(2)</sup> gumena,	patron of men,
hwæt wit geó spræcon;	what we two erst spake;
gif ic æt þearfe	if I at thy need
þínre sceolde	should
aldre linnan,	from life cease,
þæt þú me á wære	that thou to me ever
	wouldst be
ford-ge-witenum,	departed,
on fæder stæle <sup>(3)</sup> .	in a father's stead.
Wæs þú mund-bora <sup>(4)</sup>	Be thou a protector
mínum mago þegnum,	to my kindred thanes,
hond-ge-sellum <sup>(5)</sup> ,	my near comrades,
gif mec hild nime.	if me battle should take.
Swylce þú þa máðmas <sup>(6)</sup>	Likewise do thou the
	treasures
þe þú me sealdest,	that thou gavest me,
Hróð-gár leófa,	Hróthgár dear,
Hige-láce on-send:	to Higelác send:

(<sup>1</sup>) *Snotor* prudent; definite form, *se* being understood.

(<sup>2</sup>) Gold- implies *splendour*, *munificence*; wine (II. 2.) *friend* forms part of many proper names: Trum-wine, Eád-wine, Edwin, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Stæl* (II. 2.) hence *stall*; G. *stelle*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Mund* (II. 3.) *protection*; forming part of several proper names; as O's-mund, Sigemund (G. Siegmund) *Sigismund*, &c.: bora (from *beran*) *one who bears*; the second part of several compounds.

(<sup>5</sup>) Lit. *hand-comrades*; ge-sel (II. 2.) G. *ge-selle*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Máðsum*, *máðm*, *máðm* *treasure*, *gift*.

mæg þonne on þám golde	may then by the gold
on-gitan	understand
Geáta dryhten,	<i>the</i> lord of the Geáts,
ge-seón sunu Hreðles	Hrethl's son see
þonne he on þæt sinc	when he at the treasure
starað,	stareth,
þæt ic gum-cystum <sup>(1)</sup>	that I in <i>his</i> munificence
gódne funde	found <i>a</i> good
beága <sup>(2)</sup> bryttan ;	distributor of rings ;
breác þonne móste.	<i>I</i> enjoyed it while <i>I</i>
	might.
And þú Hun-ferð læt	And do thou let Hun-
	ferth
ealde láfe <sup>(3)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> old bequest,
wræt-líc <sup>(4)</sup> wæg-sweord <sup>(5)</sup> ,	<i>the</i> ornamented wave-
	sword,
wíd-cúðne man,	<i>the</i> wide-known man,
heard-ecg <sup>(6)</sup> habban.	<i>the</i> hard-edged have.
Ic me mid Hruntinge <sup>(7)</sup>	I me with Hrunting
dóm ge-wyrce,	glory will work,
odðe mec deað nimeð.	or me death shall take.
Æfter þæm wordum	After those words

(<sup>1</sup>) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence, the best of a thing* ; from *cēosan*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Beáh (II. 2.) *ring* ; F. *bague* : from *beógan*, *búgan to bow, bend*. Rings whether for the arm (*earn-beáh*), or neck (*heals-beáh*), were usual gifts from an A. S. or Scandinavian chief or prince to his followers.

(<sup>3</sup>) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, relic, heir-loom*, as swords often were.

(<sup>4</sup>) Wræt *embossed or carved ornament*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Wæg (II. 3.) *wave* ; G. *woge*, F. *vague* : *adorned with wavy lines* as blades still are.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ecg (II. 3.) *edge* ; G. *ecke*.

(<sup>7</sup>) Hrunting was the name of Beowulf's famous sword.

Weder-Geáta leód	<i>the Weder-Geáts' prince</i>
éfstē mid elne <sup>(1)</sup> ,	<i>hastened with boldness,</i>
ná-læs and-sware	<i>nor answer</i>
bídan wolde :	<i>would bide :</i>
brim-wylm on-feng	<i>the ocean-tide received</i>
hilde-rince <sup>(2)</sup> .	<i>the man of war.</i>

Part of Canto XXVII.<sup>(3)</sup>

Cwom <sup>(4)</sup> pá tó flóde	<i>Came then to the flood</i>
fela móðigra	<i>many proud</i>
hæg-stealdra <sup>(5)</sup> ,	<i>bachelors,</i>
hring net <sup>(6)</sup> bæron,	<i>who ring-nets bore,</i>
locene leoðo-syrca <sup>(7)</sup> .	<i>locked limb-shirts.</i>
Land-weard on-fand	<i>The land-guard found out</i>
eft-sið eorla,	<i>the return of the warriors,</i>
swá he ár dyde ;	<i>as he ere had done ;</i>
nó he mid hearne	<i>not with insult did he</i>
of hliðes <sup>(8)</sup> nosan <sup>(9)</sup>	<i>from the cape's point</i>
gæstas ne grétte,	<i>the guests greet,</i>
ac him tó-geanes rád ;	<i>but to meet them rode,</i>

<sup>(1)</sup> Ellen (II. 1.) *courage, valour.*<sup>(2)</sup> Rinc (II. 2.) *man, warrior.*<sup>(3)</sup> Line 3772—3835.<sup>(4)</sup> Fela usually governs a genitive plural, while the verb often stands in the singular.<sup>(5)</sup> Hæg-steald (II. 2.) G. hage-stols ; the genitive plural in -ra seems to show that this word was originally a participle past ; and " hæg-steald mon " occurs.<sup>(6)</sup> Another allusion to the rings of their mail.<sup>(7)</sup> Lið, leoð (III. 1.) G. glied, D. lid.<sup>(8)</sup> Hlið (II. 1.) *lid, covering: cliff.*<sup>(9)</sup> Nosa I. 3.

cwæð þæt wil-cuman  
Wedera leódum,

quoð that welcome  
to *the* people of *the* Wed-  
ers,

scalcas<sup>(1)</sup> on scír-hame<sup>(2)</sup>  
tó scipe fóron.

men in bright mail  
to *their* ship went.

þá wæs on sande  
sæ-geáp naca<sup>(3)</sup>  
hladen here-wædum,  
hringed stefna<sup>(4)</sup>,  
mærum and máðmum ;  
mæst hlifade

There was on *the* sand  
*the* sea-curved bark  
laden with war-weeds,  
*the* ringed vessel,  
with horses and gifts ;  
*the* mast lifted itself

ofer Hróð-gáres  
hord-ge-streónum<sup>(5)</sup> :  
he þæm bát-wearde<sup>(6)</sup>

over Hróthgár's  
hoarded treasures :

bunden golde  
swurd ge-sealde,  
þæt he síð-þán wæs  
on meodu-bence<sup>(7)</sup>

bound with gold  
a sword gave,  
so that he afterwards was  
on *the* mead-bench

máðma þý weorðre,  
yrfe-láfe.

for *the* gifts *the* worthier,  
*the* heir-loom.

Ge-wát him on nacan

*He* departed in *the* ship

(<sup>1</sup>) Scealc, scale man, servant &c. ; G. schalk *rogue*. Mearh-scealc officer &c. having the care of the horses (mearh horse) ; hence mar-shal.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ham (hama) covering, here armour.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. nachen, F. nacelle.

(<sup>4</sup>) Stefn (stemn) (II. 2.) stem, prow ; stefna ship having a stem : ship with the stem adorned with rings.

(<sup>5</sup>) Hord (II. 2.) hoard, treasure ; ge-streón (II. 3.) acquisition, wealth &c. ; streóuan, strýnan to acquire, get, beget ; hence strain, breed.

(<sup>6</sup>) Bát (II. 1.) G. boot.

(<sup>7</sup>) Meodo, medo (-u) (III. 2.) G. meth, D. meede.

dréfan deóp wæter;  
 Dena land of-geaf:  
 þá wæs be mæste  
 mere-hrægla sum,  
 segl<sup>(1)</sup> sále-fæst<sup>(2)</sup>;  
 sund-wudu<sup>(3)</sup> þunede<sup>(4)</sup>;  
 nú þær wæg-flotan<sup>(5)</sup>

wind ofer ýðum  
 sídes ge-twárfde<sup>(6)</sup>;  
 sæ-genga fór,  
 fleát fámig-heals<sup>(7)</sup>  
 forð ofer ýde,  
 bunden<sup>(8)</sup> stefna  
 ofer brim-streámas,  
 þæt hie Geáta clifu<sup>(9)</sup>

on-gitan meah-ton,  
 cúde næssas<sup>(10)</sup>.

to urge *the* deep water;  
 the Danes' land *he* left:  
 there was by *the* mast  
 a certain sea-vest,  
 a sail fast by *a* rope;  
 the sea-wood thundered;  
 not there *the* wave-floater  
 did

*the* wind over *the* billows  
 from *its* course hinder;  
 the sea-goer went,  
 floated *the* foamy-necked  
 forth over *the* wave,  
 the bounden ship  
 over *the* ocean-streams,  
 so that they *the* Geats'  
 cliffs

could make out,  
*the* known headlands.

(<sup>1</sup>) Segel (II. 2.) G. segel.

(<sup>2</sup>) Sál (II. 2.) string, &c. G. seil; hence sálan below to bind, make fast.

(<sup>3</sup>) From sund, comes sound (strait) G. sund.

(<sup>4</sup>) Þunian; comp. L. tonare; þunor (II. 2.) thunder; L. tonitru, G. donner, D. donder. Hence Þór Thor, the thunderer, (Jupiter) Tonans.

(<sup>5</sup>) Flota floater, ship, sailor; from fleotan (III. 3.) to float, fleet; F. flotter.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ge-twárfan to divide, &c.; from twá.

(<sup>7</sup>) Heals (II. 2.) neck; G. hals.

(<sup>8</sup>) With ornaments bound or wound round the prow.

(<sup>9</sup>) Clif (III. 1.) rock, cliff; L. clivus, G. klippe, D. klip.

(<sup>10</sup>) Næs nos, promontory; L. nasus, G. nase: hence -ness in Dungeness and the like.

Ceól<sup>(1)</sup> úp-ge-sprang  
 lyft-ge-swenced<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 on lande stód.  
 Hraðe wæs æt holme  
 hýð-weard<sup>(3)</sup> geara,  
 se-þe ær lange tíð  
 leófra manna,  
 fús æt faroðe,  
 fær wlátode:  
 sælde tó sando  
 sid-fæðme<sup>(4)</sup> scip  
 oncer-bendum<sup>(5)</sup> fæst,  
 þý-læs hine ýð-prym,  
 wudu wynsuman,  
 for-wrecan<sup>(6)</sup> meahte.

*The ship up-sprang  
 air-compelled,  
 on the land stood.  
 Quickly was at the sea  
 the shore-guard ready,  
 who long time ere  
 the dear men's,  
 ready at the strand,  
 journey had watched:  
 he tied to the sand  
 the wide-bosomed ship  
 with anchor-bands fast,  
 lest it the force of the  
 waves,  
 the winsome wood,  
 might damage.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Ceól (II. 2.) *keel, vessel* (= L. *carina*) G. *kiel*: vessels called *keels* are still in use on the Humber.

(<sup>2</sup>) Lyft (II. 3.) G. *luft*, O. *lift*; *swencan to drive, urge*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Hýð (II. 3.) *haven, &c.*; hence *-hythe* in *Queen-hythe, &c.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Fæðm II. 2.

(<sup>5</sup>) Oncer, ancer (II. 2.) G. *anker*.

(<sup>6</sup>) For-wrecan (II. 1.) *to banish, injure, &c. hence to wreck*.

## APPENDIX.

---

1.—*Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning.*

---

\*.\* This list, in addition to what is stated at p. 2, will prove the great importance of attention to the quantity of A. S. vowels, if only as a mean of distinguishing words otherwise of the same aspect, but in truth differing in every respect but spelling. Other spellings, by which some of the words may be further known from each other, are given between brackets.

---

Ac (ah) *but*.

ác (II. 3.) *oak*; G. eiche, D. eik.

a-gán *a-gone, a-go*.

ágan (anom.) *to own, possess, have*.

a-gen<sup>(1)</sup> (a-(on-)gean) *a-gain, a-against*; G. gegen, D. te-gen.

ágen *own*; G. and D. eigen.

an (on) *on, in*; éiv, L. ÿn, G. an, D. aan<sup>(2)</sup>.

an (ann) (*I*) *grant, from unuan*.

(<sup>1</sup>) P. *egen* or *agin*.

(<sup>2</sup>) The Dutch sometimes, as here, has lengthened a short vowel; on the whole however it will perhaps be found as safe a guide to the A. S. quantity as any modern language can be. In D. a double vowel or diphthong, in G. a diphthong, a vowel with *h* before or after it, or a double vowel, in general answers to an A. S. long vowel.

- án *one, a* ; G. ein, D. een : L. ūn-us, *ús* <sup>(1)</sup>.  
 ar (II. 2.) *messenger*.  
 ár (II. 3.) *honour* ; G. ehre, D. eer.  
 aras ; plur. of ar.  
 a-rás *a-rose*, from a-rísan.  
 ædre *instantly, forthwith*.  
 ædre (I. 3.) *vein* ; G. and D. ader.  
 æl (II. 2.) *awl* ; G. ahl, D. els.  
 æl (II. 2.) *eel* ; G. and D. aal.  
 ban (ge-bann) (II. 2.) *ban, edict* ; G. bann, D. ban.  
 bán (II. 1.) *bone* ; G. bein, D. been.  
 bæ̃r (II.) *bare* ; G. bar.  
 bæ̃r (*I*) *bare* ; G. (ge-)bar.  
 bá̃r (II. 3.) *bier* ; G. bahre, D. baar.  
 ben (benn) (II. 3.) *wound*.  
 bé̃n (II. 3.) *prayer*.  
 blæ̃d (II. 2.) *fruit* ; G. blatt, D. blad (*leaf, blade*).  
 blæ̃d (II. 3.) *blast* ; G. blasen.  
 brid (bridd) (II. 2.) (*young*) *bird*.  
 bríd (brýd) (II. 3.) *bride* ; G. braut, D. brijd.  
 bũde ; 2nd pers. imperf. of beódan *to bid*.  
 bú̃de ; imperf. of búan *to cultivate, &c.* G. baute.  
 cneow (III. 1.) *knee* ; G. and D. knie.  
 cneó̃w (*I*) *knew*.  
 coc (cocc) (II. 2.) *cock*.  
 có̃c (II. 2.) *cook*.  
 feol <sup>(2)</sup> (feoll) (*I*) *fell* ; G. fiel.

<sup>(1)</sup> Here and often else, the *ν* has evidently been dropped before *σ* ; it appears in the neut. *íν*, and in the oblique cases *íνος*, &c. See Additions, &c.

<sup>(2)</sup> Quantity doubtful ; if long, both words should be shifted to II. below.



feól (fyl) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl. (¹)

floc (flocc) (II. 2.) *flock (of sheep &c.)*

floc (flocc) (II. 3.) *flock (of wool &c.)*; G. flocke, D. vlok.

flóc (II. 3.) *flook, (flat-fish, of an anchor.)*

for- (prefix) *for-*; G. ver-.

for *for*; G. für, D. voor.

fór (II. 3.) *going, journey.*

fór; imperf. of faran; G. fuhr, D. voer.

fore *be-fore*; G. vor, D. voor, L. pro, πο.

fóre; 2nd pers. imperf. of faran.

ful (full) (II. 1.) *cup.*

ful (full) *full*; G. voll, D. vol.

fúl *foul*; G. faul, D. vuil.

fyl (fyll) (II. 2.) *felling, slaughter.*

fyl (fyll) (II. 3.) *fill, glut*; G. fülle.

fýl (feól) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.

fyr *further.*

fýr (II. 1.) *fire*; G. feuer, D. vuur: πυρ.

geat (III. 1.) *gate*; D. gat *hole, opening.*

geát; imperf. of geótan *to pour*; G. goss, D. goot.

geoc (II. 1.) *yoke*; G. joch, D. juk, L. jūgum, ζυγον.

geóc (II. 3.) *consolation.*

geong *young*; G. jung, D. jong.

geóng; imperf. of gán; G. gieng.

God (II. 2.) *God*; G. Gott, D. God.

gód *good*; G. gut, D. goed.

heaf (III. 1.) *ocean, deep*; G. haf-en, D. hav-en *hav-en*,  
F. hav-re.

heáf (heóf) (II. 2.) *grief.*

(¹) D. v is  $\frac{2}{1}$  f.

- ham *ham* ; D. ham.  
ham (hama) (II. 2.) *covering, skin*.  
hám<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *home, dwelling* ; G. heim, D. heem.  
hama (homa, ham) ; see above.  
háma *grasshopper*.  
hig (II. 1.) *hay* ; G. heu.  
hig *hey! oh!*  
híg (hī) *they* : of, L. ei, ii.  
hof (II. 2.) *court, dwelling* ; G. and D. hof.  
hóf (*I*) *hove* ; G. hub, D. hief.  
hwæte *eager, brave*.  
hwáte (II. 2.) *wheat* ; G. weizen, D. weit.  
hyrde (II. 2.) *herd* ; G. hirt.  
hýrde (*I*) *heard* ; G. hörte.  
hyre (hire) *her* ; G. ihr.  
hýre (heóre) *gentle, mild* ; G. (un-ge-)heuer.  
is *is* ; G. ist, D. is : *ist*, L. est.  
ís (II. 1.) *ice* ; G. eis, D. ijs.  
lam *lame* ; G. lahm, D. lam.  
lám (II. 2.) *loam* ; G. lehm, D. leem.  
leoð (lið) (III. 1.) *limb* ; G. glied, D. lid.  
leóð (II. 1.) *lay, song* ; G. and D. lied.  
lim (III. 1.) *limb*.  
lím (II. 2.) *lime, s-lime*<sup>(2)</sup> ; G. (sch-)leim, D. (s-)lijm.  
man (mann) (III. 2.) *man* ; G. mann, D. man.  
mán (II. 1.) *sin, crime* ; comp. G. mein-eid, D. mijn-eed  
*perjury, and our man-sworn*.

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *ham-let*, and *ham (hamp-)* in local names ; comp. G. Blind-heini, D. Gorinc-hem &c.

<sup>(2)</sup> See p. 105, n. 9.

- mæst (II. 2.) *mast* ; G. mast.  
 mæst *most* ; G. meist, D. meest.  
 men (menn) *men* ; G. männer.  
 mén *necklace, &c.* L. mon-ile.  
 metan (II. 1.) *to mete, measure* ; G. messen, D. meeten  
 metan (I. 2.) *to paint*.  
 métan (I. 2.) *to meet* ; D. moeten.  
 ne *not*, O. *ne* ; L. and F. *ne*.  
 né (for ne-ge) *nor* ; L. nec, G. noch, F. ni.  
 nið (II. 2.) *man, warrior*.  
 nið (II. 2.) *envy, malice* ; G. neid.  
 sæd *sated, hence sad* ; G. satt : comp. L. sāt-is *enough*.  
 sæd (ge-sæd, -sægd) *said* ; G. ge-sagt.  
 sēd (II. 1.) *seed* ; G. saat, D. zaad<sup>(1)</sup>.  
 sæl (sel, sal, sele) *hall* ; G. saal, F. salle : αὐλή.  
 sæl (II. 2.) *time*.  
 sæl (sél) *good, excellent*.  
 spræc (I) *spake* ; G. sprach, D. sprach.  
 spræc (II. 3.) *speech* ; G. sprache, D. spraak.  
 syn (synn) (II. 3.) *sin* ; G. sünde, D. zonde.  
 sýn (seón) (II. 3.) *sight*.  
 sýn (sín) *his, &c.* ; G. sein, D. zijn.  
 to- (prefix) G. zer-<sup>(2)</sup>.  
 tú *to* ; G. zu, D. te, toe, tot.  
 tú *too* ; G. zu, D. te.  
 tol (toll) (II. 1.) *toll* ; G. zoll, D. tol.  
 tól (II. 1.) *tool*.  
 uton *let us—* ; L. utin-am ?

(1) D. z often answers to A. S., E. and G. s.

(2) G. z (= ts) answers to A. S., E., and D. t.

úton *without*; G. aussen, D. b-uiten.

wæg (II. 3.) *dish, wey, weight, balance*; G. wage, D. waag.

wæg (II. 2.) *wave*; G. woge, F. vague.

wende (*I*) *turned, went*; G. wandte, D. wende.

wínde (*I*) *weened*; G. währte, D. waande.

werig *spiteful*.

wérig *weary*.

westan *from the west*.

wéstan (I. 2.) *to waste, ravage*; G. ver-wüsten.

win (ge-winn) (II. 2.) *war, labour, gain*; G. ge-winn.

win (wyn) (II. 3.) *pleasure*; G. wonne.

wín (II. 1.) *wine*; G. wein, D. wijn: oiv-oc, L. vīn-um.

þa *the &c.*; G. die, D. de: rä.

þá *then, when*; G. da.

þara (þar, þær) *there*; G. dar.

þára (þæra) *of the &c.*; G. der.

II.—*Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning.*

Aldor (ealdor)<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *chief, prince*; hence aldor-man.

aldor (ealdor) (II. 2.) *life*.

ær (II. 1.) *brass*; G. eher, erz, L. æs, ær-is.

ær *ere*; G. eher, D. eer.

æt (II. 2.) *food, eating*.

æt (*I*) *ate*; G. ass, D. at

æt *at*; L. ad.

(<sup>1</sup>) The A. S. has a tendency to insert e ( y) before a: hence the frequent modern pronunciation of *kyart* for *cart* and the like.

bát (II. 1.) *boat*; G. boot.

bát (I) *bit*; G. biss, D. beet.

beáh (II. 2.) *ring*; F. bague.

beáh; imperf. of búgan *to bow, bend*; G. biege, D. boog.

beó (I. 3.) *bee*; G. biene, D. bij.

beó (I) *be*; G. bin, D. ben.

beón *bees*.

beón *to be*.

bere (II. 2.) *bere, bar-ley*.

bere (I) *bear*.

bil (II. 1.) *bill, faulchion*; G. beil, D. bijl.

bil *bill, beak*.

blác *pale, bleak*, hence *black*; G. bleich, D. bleek.

blác; imperf. of blícan *to shine, blink*; G. blinken.

bóc (III. 3.) *book*; G. buch, D. boek.

bóc; imperf. of bacan *to bake*; D. biek.

byre (II. 2.) *son, child*.

byre (II. 2.) *event, time*.

byrne (I. 3.) *corslet*, O. birnie.

byrne (birne) (I) *burn* (neut.) G. brenne.

cin (cinn) (II. 1.) *chin*, G. kinn.

cin (cynn) (II. 1.) *kin, race*.

cyst (cist) (II. 3.) *chest*; P. kist, G. kiste, D. kist.

cyst (II. 3.) *choice*; D. keus.

cyst; 3rd pers. pres. of cyssan *to kiss*; G. küsst.

deór (II. 1.) *animal, deer*; G. thier, D. dier.

deór (dýr) *dear*; G. theuer, D. duur.

ealdor; see aldor above.

earm (II. 2.) *arm*; G. arm, L. arm-us.

earm *poor*; G. arm.

éce (II. 2.) *ache*.

éce *eternal*.

fáh *hostile*; hence *foe*.

fáh *variegated, stained, discoloured*.

fær (II. 2.) *stratagem*.

fær (II. 3.) *carriage, going*; hence *fare*.

fæsten (III. 1.) *fastness*; G. *fasta*.

fæsten (II. 1.) *fast*; G. *fasten*.

fæt (III. 1.) *vat, fat*; L. *vas*, G. *fass*, D. *vat*.

fæt *fat*; G. *fett*, D. *vet*.

from (fromm) *bold, pious*; G. *fromm*.

from (fram) *from*.

fyllan (II. 2.) *to fill*; G. *füllen*, D. *vullen*.

fyllan (II. 2.) *to fell*; G. *fällen*, D. *vellen*.

fyrst (first) (II. 3.) *period, space of time*; G. *frist*.

fyrst (fyrmost) *first, chief*; G. *fürst*.

ge *ye*; D. *gij*.

ge *both &c.*

gif *if*, O. *gif*; G. *ob*.

gif *give*; G. *gieb*.

git (gyt, get, iet) *yet*.

git (gyt) *ye two*.

healt *halt, lame*.

healt (hylt, healded) *holdeth*.

hrán (hrón) (II. 2.) *whale*.

hrán; imperf. of hrínan *to touch*.

hund (II. 2.) *hound, dog*; G. *hund*, D. *hond*.

hund (II. 1.) *hundred &c.*; D. *hond*.

hylt (hilt) (II. 1.) *hilt*.

hylt = healt, healded; (see above) G. *hált*.

hyrst<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *forest*.

hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament*.

in (inn) (II. 1.) *dwelling, inn*.

in (on) in; *iv*, G. and L. in.

leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub, D. loof.

leáf (II. 2.) *leave*; G. ur-laub, D. ver-lof<sup>(2)</sup>.

leán (II. 1.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

leán (II. 3.) *to reproach, blame*.

leás *false, loose*; G. loos, L. lax-us.

leás; imperf. of leósan *to lose*.

list (lyst, lust) (II. 2.) *lust, desire, pleasure*; G. lust.

list (II. 3.) *craft*; G. list.

lið (leoð) (III. 1.) *limb*; G. glied, D. lid.

lið *fleet, navy*.

lið (liegeð) (*he*) *lieth*; G. liegt.

mæg (II. 2.) *son, kin's-man*; D. maag.

mæg (*I*) *may*; G. and D. mag.

mægð (II. 3.) *maid*; G. magd, maid, D. meid.

mægð (II. 3.) *tribe, kindred, generation*.

mæl (II. 3.) *time &c.* G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl (III. 1.) *spot*; G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl *picture, image*.

mánan (I. 2.) *to mean*; G. meinen, D. meenen.

ménan (I. 2.) *to moan*.

mearh (mear)<sup>(3)</sup> (II. 2.) *horse*.

mearh (mearg) (II. 3.) *marrow*; G. mark, D. merg.

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence *Hurst*, *Lynd-hurst* &c.; comp. G. *Delmen-horst* &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) Hence *fur-lough*; or there may have been an A. S. *for-leáf*.

(<sup>3</sup>) There are traces of the E. masc. *mear* in local names and old sayings; *night-mare* and G. *nacht-mahr* are properly masc. answering to L. *incubus*, *incubo*; G. *mähre mare*, answers to A. S. *myre*, D. *metrie*.

- mót (ge-mót) (II. 1.) *mote, meeting.*  
 mót (I) *must, may*; G. muss, D. moet.  
 næs (nose) (II. 2.) *nose, ness, headland*; G. nase, D. neus, L. nas-us.  
 næs (ne wæs) *was not.*  
 næs (nas) *not.*  
 neát (II. 1.) *neat, nout, ox.*  
 neát; imperf. of neótan *to use.*  
 nest (II. 1.) *nest*; G. nest.  
 nest (nist, nyst) (II. 3.) *food, provision.*  
 ofer (ufor) (II. 2.) *shore, bank*; G. ufer, D. oever.  
 ofer *over*; *ὑπερ*, L. super, G. über, D. over.  
 odðe *or*, O. *other*; G. oder, L. aut.  
 odðe (for oð-pæt) *until.*  
 rædan (I. 2.) *to read, guess*; G. er-rathen, D. raaden.  
 rædan (I. 2.) *to rede, advise*; G. rathen, D. raaden.  
 ríce (III. 1.) *realm, empire*; G. reich, D. rijk.  
 ríce *powerful, rich*; G. reich, D. rijk.  
 sæc (II. 2.) *sack*; *σακκος*, L. saccus, G. sack, D. zak.  
 sæc (II. 3.) *war, battle.*  
 sæl (II. 2.) *time, occasion.*  
 sæl (sél) *good.*  
 sceaft (II. 2.) *shaft, spear*; G. schaft.  
 sceaft (ge-sceaft) (II. 3.) *creature, creation.*  
 scír (II. 3.) *shire, division.*  
 scír *bright, clear, sheer*; G. schier.  
 scyld (scild) (II. 2.) *shield*; G. schild.  
 scyld (II. 3.) *debt &c.*; G. schuld.  
 segen (II. 2.) *sign, ensign*; L. signum.  
 segen (II. 3.) *saw, saying*; G. sage.



seld (II. 1.) *seat, throne*.

seld (seldan) *seldom*; G. selten, D. zelden.

séó *sight, pupil of the eye*.

seó *the, who*; G. sie, D. zij; *ī*, L. ea.

side (I. 3.) *side*; G. seite, D. zijde.

side (I. 3.) *silk*; G. seide, D. zijde.

side *widely*.

síð (II. 2.) *time, journey &c.*

síð *late*.

síð *since*, O. *sith*; G. seit.

slege (slecge) (II. 2.) *sledge (hammer)*.

slege (III. 1.) *slaying*.

span (II. 3.) *span*; G. spanne, D. span.

span (I) *span*; G. spann.

stefn (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; G. steven, D. steeven.

stefn (stern) (II. 3.) *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

stician *to stick, stab*; G. stechen } D. steeken.

stician *to stick, cleave*; G. stecken }

tréowe<sup>(1)</sup> (trýwe) *true, faithful*; G. treu, D. trouw.

tréowe (trýwe, tréowd) (I. 3.) *truth, troth, faith*; G.

treue, D. trouw.

tyn (tin) (II. 1.) *tin*; G. zinn, D. tin, L. s-taunum.

tyn (tyne)<sup>(2)</sup> *ten*; G. zehn, D. tien.

wan (won) *dark, dusky*; hence *wan*.

(<sup>1</sup>) Tréowe (adj.) and tréowe or tréowð (noun) with the G. and D. synonyms, never have the modern sense of our *true, truth*, L. *verus, veritas*, G. *wahr, wahrheit*, D. *waar, waarheid*; these are in A. S. *sóð* and *sóð-fretnis*: *sóð-fretn* (used chiefly of persons) conveys both notions, as also that of *justice, veracity*—"honest and true." It need hardly be added that anyhow *Truth* is neither in word nor in deed "that which one *traveth*."

(<sup>2</sup>) *Tyne* seems rarely used except absolutely; see p. 34.

- cwelan (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.  
 cwellan (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. quälen *to vex &c.*  
 denn (II. 1.) *den*.  
 denu (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.  
 drincan (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. trinken, D. trinken.  
 drencan (I. 2.) *to drench, drown (act.)*; G. trän'ken, D. drenken.  
 a-drincan (III. 1.) *to drown (neut.)*; G. er-trinken, D. ver-drinken.  
 faran (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. fahren, D. vaaren.  
 feran (I. 2.) }  
 ferian *to convey, carry, also go*; G. führen, D. voeren.  
 feallan (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. fallen, D. vallen.  
 fyllan (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.  
 fleógan (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.  
 fligan (a-fligan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.  
 fúlian *to rot, grow foul*; G. ver-faulen.  
 fulliau *to baptise*.  
 grætan (greótan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. krijten.  
 grétan (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. grüssen, D. groeten.  
 hangian *to hang (neut.)*; G. hangen.  
 hangan (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang (act.)*; G. hängen.  
 hátan (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. heissen, D. heeten.  
 hatian *to hate*; G. hassen, D. haaten.  
 hæbban (habban) *to have*; G. haben, D. hebben.  
 hebban (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. heben, D. heffen.  
 heort (h'eorot) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. hirsch, D. hert.  
 heorte (I. 3.) *heart*; G. herz, D. hart.  
 hlast (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.  
 hlæst (II. 1.) *last, load*; G. last.

þe *thee* ; Dor. *te*, L. *te*, G. *dich*.

þeah *though* ; G. *doch*.

þeah (þáh) imperf. of þeón *to thrive* ; G. *ge-lieg*.

### III.—Other words likely to be confounded by learners.

Æl- for eal ; as æl-mihtig *almighty*.

æl- (el-) ; as, æl-þeðdig *foreign*.

beran (II. 1.) *to bear*.

berian <sup>(1)</sup> *to bare*.

birnan <sup>(2)</sup> (byrnan) (III. 1.) *to burn*, (neut.) G. *brennen*.

bærnan (bernán) (I. 2.) *to burn*, (act) G. *brennen*.

búgan (beógan) (III. 3.) *to bow, bend*, (neut.) G. *biegen*,

D. *buigen*.

bígan (I. 2.) *to bow, bend*, (act.)

búgian (= búan) *to inhabit* &c.

cleófan (clúfan) (III. 3.) *to cleave, split* ; G. *klieben*, D.

*klieven*, *klooven*.

clifian *to cleave, stick* ; G. *kleben*, D. *kleeven*.

cunnan (anom.) *to know, be able*.

cunnian *to try, tempt, attempt*.

(1) The conjugation of verbs in -ian is not marked here or in the later notes above, as they can only be I. 1.

(2) Here and in the other instances below the neuter verb is complex, conj. II. or III., while the active is simple, conj. I., usually I. 2. ; the latter is commonly formed from the imperf. of the former ; as, *birne*, *barn* ; *bærnan*, and the like : the E., G., and D. synonyms on the whole answer closely to the A. S. *Fall* for *fell*, *lay* for *lie*, *set* for *sit* are as wrong as *drink* for *drunch*, or *drunch* for *drink* would be. Comp. L. *pendere* *to hang*, (neut.) *pendere* *to hang* (act.) &c.

cwelan (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.

cwellan (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. quälen *to vex &c.*

denn (II. 1.) *den*.

denu (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.

drincan (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. trinken, D. trinken.

drencan (I. 2.) *to drench, drown (act.)*; G. tränken, D. drenken.

a-drincan (III. 1.) *to drown (neut.)*; G. er-trinken, D. ver-drinken.

faran (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. fahren, D. vaaren.  
feran (I. 2.) }

ferian *to convey, carry, also go*; G. führen, D. voeren.

feallan (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. fallen, D. vallen.

fyllan (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.

fleógan (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.

fligan (a-fligan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.

fúlian *to rot, grow foul*; G. ver-faulen.

fullian *to baptise*.

grætan (greótan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. krijten.

grétan (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. grüssen, D. groeten.

hangian *to hang (neut.)*; G. hangen.

hangan (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang (act.)*; G. hängen.

hátan (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. heissen, D. heeten.

hatian *to hate*; G. hassen, D. haaten.

hæbban (habban) *to have*; G. haben, D. hebben.

hebban (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. heben, D. heffen.

heort (hærot) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. hirsch, D. hert.

heorte (I. 3.) *heart*; G. herz, D. hart.

hlæst (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.

hlæst (II. 1.) *last, load*; G. last.

hnígan (III. 2.) *to stoop*; D. nijgen, G. neigen (act.)

hnægan (I. 2.) *to make stoop*.

hrím *rime, frost*.

rím (II. 2.) *rime, number*; G. reim, D. rijm.

hýran (I. 2.) *to hear*; G. hören, D. hooren.

hýrian *to hire*; G. heuern, D. huuren.

herian *to praise*.

hergian *to harry, ravage*; G. ver-heeren.

inc *you two*.

inca (¹) *ill-will*.

irnan (yrnan) (III. 1.) *to run*; G. rinnen, D. rennen.

ærnan (ernan) (I. 2.) *to let run*.

lág (II. 3.) *law*; L. lex, lēg-is.

lagu (III. 3.) *water*; comp. L. lăc-us, G. lache *lake* &c.

leán (II. 2.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

lân (II. 1.) *loan*; G. lehen.

leom (lim) (III. 1.) *limb*.

leóma *light*; L. lūm-en.

leósan (III. 3.) *to lose*; G. ver-lieren, D. ver-liezen.

losian *to be lost, escape from, perish*.

lýsan (a-lýsan) (I. 2.) *to loose, re-lease, re-deem*; G. er-lösen.

letan (lettan) (I. 2.) *to let, hinder*.

lætan (II. 2.) *to let, leave*; G. lassen, D. laaten.

liccian *to lick*; λειχεν, L. lingere, G. lecken, D. lecken.

lician *to please, like*.

licgan (II. 1.) *to lie*; G. liegen, D. liggen.

legcan (I. 3.) *to lay*; G. legen, D. legen.

(¹) The declension of nouns in -a here, and in the later notes to the Extracts, is not marked, as they can be only I. 1.

be-lífan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.

læfan (I. 2.) *to leave, make remain.*

a lýfan (lýfan) (I. 2.) *to al-low*; G. er-lauben, F. al-louer.

ge-lýfan (I. 2.) *to be-lieve*; G. g-lauben, D. ge-looven.

lidan (III. 2.) *to go, voyage.*

lædan (I. 2.) *to lead, make go*; G. leiten, D. leiden.

locc (II. 2.) *lock (of hair &c.)*; D. lok.

loca *locker, fold, place locked or shut up.*

locu (III. 2.) *lock, fastening; also locker &c.*

lutian *to lurk*; L. lät-ere.

lútan (leótan) (III. 3.) *to lout, bow.*

mæd (II. 1.) *math, mead*; G. mahd, matte.

méd (II. 3.) *meed, reward.*

medo (-u, meodo) (III. 2.) *mead*; G. meth, D. meede.

mæg (mæcg, mecg) (II. 2. plur. magas) *son, kin's-man.*

mæg (II. 2. plur. mægás) } *kin's-man*; D. maag.

maga (plur. magan)

mæge (I. 3.) *kin's-woman.*

metan } See I. above.

métan }

mætan (I. 2.) *to paint.*

múð (II. 2.) *mouth (of an animal)*; G. mund, D. mond.

múða *mouth (of a river)*; G. münd-ung.

a-rísan (III. 2.) *to a-rise*; D. rijzen.

a-ræran (I. 2.) *to rear.*

sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. sähen, D. zaaijen.

seówian (sýwian) *to sew.*

sincan (III. 1.) *to sink* (neut.); G. sinken, D. zinken.

sencan (I. 2.) *to sink* (act.); G. senken, D. zenken.

sittan (II. 1.) *to sit*; G. sitzen, D. zitzen.

settan (I. 2.) *to set*; G. setzen, D. zetten.

siġan (III. 2.) *to sink, fall down.*

sæġan (I. 2.) *to throw down, subdue.*

springan (III. 1.) *to spring, burst* (neut.); G. springen.

sprengan (I. 2.) *to spring, burst* (act.); G. sprengen. (¹)

swefan (II. 1.) *to sleep.*

swebban *to put to sleep.*

swefnian *to dream.*

swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.

swencan (I. 2.) *to make labour, oppress.*

swindan (III. 1.) *to vanish*; G. schwinden.

swendan (I. 2.) *to make vanish, dissipate*; G. verschwenden.

treów (III. 1.) *tree.*

treówe (trýwe) *true, truth*; see II. above.

wacan (II. 3.) (wacian) *to wake, watch* (neut.); G. wachen, D. waaken.

weccan (I. 2.) *to wake* (act.); G. wecken, D. wekken.

weder (II. 1.) *weather*; G. wetter, D. weder.

wæder (II. 2.) *wether*; G. widder.

wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling*; ola-oc: see p. 103, n. 12.

wicġ (II. 1.) *horse.*

wig (II. 2.) *war.*

windan (III. 1.) *to wind, turn* (neut.); G. and D. winden.

wendan (I. 3.) *to turn* (act.), *wend, go*; G. and D. wenden.

(¹) *To spring (a mine), blow up or open.*

*wise* (I. 3.) *wise, manner*; G. *weise*, D. *wijze*.

*wisa wise man, guide*; G. *weiser*, D. *wijzer*.

*witan* (anom.) *to know &c.*: see I. above.

*ge-witan to depart*.

*witian to decide*.

*wite* (III. 1.) *punishment*; O. *wite*.

*wita counsellor*; hence *witena-ge-mót parliament*.

*wræð wrath, anger*.

*wrād wroth, angry*.

*þincan* (I. 3.) *to seem*; G. *dünken*, D. *dunken*.

*þencan* (I. 3.) *to think, make seem to one-self*; G. and  
D. *denken*.<sup>(1)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. *δοκῶ I think, seem, δοκεῖ μοι me-thinks*.



#### IV.—Additional Notes.

---

Page 1.—Æ is not a diphthong, but a modification of a in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by e; thus dæg, dæge, but plur. dagas, dagum; so also fæt, sæd, &c. : answering to Goth. é, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote i without a dot, ÿ with one.

Þ probably gave rise to the O. abbreviations ye for *the* (þe), yt for *that* (þt), &c.

---

Page 2.—ȝ was also written for oʒ ȝe or, s oʒ ȝ for s oʒ-like truly, verily. Examples of the use of ñ are þā for þām to the &c., þen for þonne then, when.

In later times ȝ occurs for g, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards = y: hence the O. z still retained in some S. names, as Dalsell, Menzies, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, wiid, good, gees, for wíd, gód, géa, like D. wijd &c.; in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects; as, (sleahan) sleán, G. schlagen, D. slaan; gangan, gán, G. gehen, D. gaan; hangan, hón, G. and D. hangen. N has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before s, (Note 1.) while it remains in kindred tongues; as, ést (*love, favour*), Goth. ansts; gós, G. gans, L. ans-er; ós (*god, hero*) Goth. ans; s óft, G. sanft; fás (*prompt*), Goth. funs; ús, Goth. and G. uns, L. nos, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where ns is in like manner avoided; as, δονς, δόνα (L. dano), στας, στάνα (L. stano), Σπους, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the ν appears as soon as the σ is removed: neut. δον, σταν; gen. δονος, στανος, Σπουνος &c. In A. S. í, ý, ó, and ú before ȝ,

often answer to a cognate short vowel followed by *nd*, *nt*, or *nth*, in the other languages; as, *liše*, (*lithe*, *soft*) G. *linde*; *eiš* (*time*) Goth. *sintha*, Dan. *sinde*; *awiš*, Goth. *swintha*; *hrýšer*, G. *riad*, D. *rund*; *ŷš*, L. *unda*; *óšer*, Goth. *anthars*, G. *ander*; *teóše* (*tent*), G. *sehnte*; *eúš*, G. *kund*; *gúš* (*war*), Goth. *guntha*, O. G. *kund*.

In the Imperfects *stúd*, *bróhte*, *þáhte*, *þóhte*, *n* is likewise dropt, and the vowel made long, *g* or *e* in the three last becoming *h*, as often else; *cunnan* and *unnan* also make *eúše*, *úše* instead of *cunde* (G. *kounte*), *unle*: *bohte* *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L.; as, *fundo*, *fúdi*, *fusus*; *tundo*, *tūsus*, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

---

Page 4.—Sometimes too *g* is added before *e*, as *geów* for *eów*, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41); with a soft vowel before or after it, *g* seems to have been but lightly sounded, as *y*, or as a fine guttural.

---

Page 5.—Other changes are *io* for *eo*, and *ió* for *eó*; *seofon*, *siofon*, *heó*, *hió*: *u* for *o*, and *ú* for *ó*, especially after *ge*, which sometimes becomes *i*; *geong*, (*giung*) *lung*; *geó*, (*glú*) *iú*, *ió*; *Iótas*, *Iútas* *Jutes*: *ie* for *y*; *gyld*, *gield* *payment*, *tax* &c. *U* occurs mediævally for *v* in foreign names, as *Dauid* *David*; hence also for *f*, as *luufian* for *lufian* *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

---

Page 8.—A. S. *d* has sometimes become E. *th* (*soft*), often G. *t*; *fæder* *father*, G. *vater*. *p* and *þ* usually answer to G. and D. *d*; *þreo*, G. *drei*, D. *drie*; *bróðer*, G. *bruder*, D. *broeder*; *ð* sometimes to G. and D. *t*; *forð*, G. *fort*, D. *voort*. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination *th* for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as *þ* is found oftenest at the beginning, and *ð* at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German :

Neut. <i>clif</i>	G. <i>klippe</i> (f.)	<i>cliff, rock.</i>
— <i>lfe</i>	G. <i>leiche</i> (f.)	<i>corps.</i>
— <i>séd</i>	G. <i>saat</i> (f.)	<i>seed.</i>
— <i>sceorp</i>	G. <i>schärpe</i> (f.)	<i>scarf.</i>
— <i>big-spel</i>	G. <i>bei-spiel</i> (m.)	<i>example.</i>
— <i>toll</i>	G. <i>zoll</i> (m.)	<i>toll.</i>
Masc. <i>næs</i>	G. <i>nase</i> (f.)	<i>nose, nose.</i>
— <i>sél</i>	G. <i>seil</i> (n.)	<i>cord.</i>
— <i>tear</i>	G. <i>zähre</i> (f.)	<i>tear.</i>
— <i>an-(ge-)weald</i>	G. <i>ge-walt</i> (f.)	<i>power.</i>
Fem. <i>blæd</i>	G. <i>blatt</i> (n.)	<i>fruit, leaf.</i>
— <i>nyt</i>	G. <i>nutz</i> (m.)	<i>use.</i>

L. has *clivus* masc. and *clivum* neut. ; *nasus* is masc.

Page 9.—*Swefen dream* is fem. II. 3., and neut. III. 1.

*Sceð shoe* (G. *schuh* masc.) is masc. II. 2. (plur. *sceðas*), or fem. I. 3. (plur. *sceón* O. *shoon*), or III. 3. (plur. *(ge-)scý.*)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as *-e*, *-u*, *-el*, *-en*, *-er*, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more : *setl seat*, and *wered host* are masc. ; *-oð* and *-uð* are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem. ; as, *geógoð(-uð) youth*, from *geong* : *-ð* after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, *strengð* from *strang* ; otherwise sometimes neut. as, *morð murder*, or masc. as *monð (monað) month*.

Compounds in *-lác* are neut., in *-ræden* feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders ; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more

case-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer to the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in *-σι*, and the L. in *-bus*, the latter to the Gr. which form it in *-αις* or *-αισ*, and the L. in *-is*. The terms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater *seeming* propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only *-n*, and in the latter they have oftener the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon; thus, simple: *οὐς*, *aur-is*, *εἰρ-ε*; *ἄνθρωπος*, *nom-en*, *nam-a*; *hom-o*, *gum-a*; complex: *ἀγαπῶν*, *wecore*; *πυρρ-ος*, *burh*; *via*, *weg*; *vir*, *wer*. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning; as, *heofon*, *heofone* *heaven*, *mann*, *manna* *man*, *πῆῶν*, *πῆῶνα* *slave*; some with; as, *μήν* *month* (*animate*), *μήσα* *month* (*inanimate*), see List III. above; *lufu* and *lufe* are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for *love*, *affection* (*amor*), the latter for *love*, *sake* (*gratia*): *Godes lufa* *love of God*; for *sumes gódes lufan* *for the sake of some good*.

---

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. it is derived from it; the ablative next as in some words derived from the accus.; and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, as being in neuters and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c.: in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, *twá*, *bá*, and *þreo* are noticeable exceptions.

---

Page 13.—The plural ending *-an* (G. *-en*) became in time *-en* which in *ox-en* (*ox-an*) is yet rightly used; *hos-en* (*hós-a*), and P. *hou-en* (*hús*), and *furz-en* (*fyrz-as*) are wrong. To *brethr-en* (*bróðr-u*),

and *childr-en* (cildr-u) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *child-er* still in P. use: see p. 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. küch-en) whence *chick* is shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *viz-en*; see p. 66.

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined; as *Gota Goth*, *Beda*, *Anna*: *Europa* follows the L. making accus. *Europam*; dat. and gen. *Europe* (the medieval form of *Europæ*): *Donua Danube* (G. *Donau*; well called by Milton *Donaw*), and sometimes *Sicilia* and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a; all nouns in -a being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in -u, (II. 3. or III. 3.); as, *Mæð-hild*, *Eád-gifu*, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgiva*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative; as, *He ge-seáh Simonem he saw Simon*. *Fram Decapoli from Decapolis*. *Iacobus Zebedei James (son) of Zebedes*. *Lazarus gá út! Lazarus come forth!* Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II. 2., as, *Salomon*, *Salomones*, *Salomone*; *Petrus*, *Petre*, and the like.

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as *herr-ens*, *nam-ens*, *will-ens*, *lieb-ens* (-würdig), are derived from the Goth. gen., *hairt-ins*, *nam-ins* (L. *nom-ins*) *will-ins* &c. A. S. *heort-an*, *nam-an*, *will-an*, *luf-an*. *Glaub-ens* is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in -en, *glauben*, (complex) Goth. *ga-láubeins*, A. S. (simple) *ge-leáfa*. *Herz-e* (Goth. *hairto*, A. S. *heorte*) is still in P. and poetical use: other G. simple nouns, as *heri* (A. S. *hearra*) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as *auf erden* (*on earth*), *vor freuden* (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in -n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed.

---

Page 15.—Nouns in -e (II. 2.) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, *end-eas*, *end-eum* &c.

*Freónd* and *feónd* being originally participials, derived, the former from *freógan* (G. *freien*) *to court, honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to *fáh hostile* (whence *for*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II. 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that *æ* is changed to *a*; otherwise not; as, *wæstm*, pl. *wæstmas* (*fruit*) *meer*, pl. *meeras*, *meas*: thus too in adjectives; *smæl*, þæt *smale*, *smalor*, but *fæst*, þæt *fæste*, *fæster* and the like.

*Feld* and *ford* originally belonged to III. 3; *feld-u*, *ford-u* like *sun-u*

---

Page 17.—*Hand* belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in *-u*: *hand-u*.

---

Page 20.—*Wædla* poor hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (I. 2.) a *beggar*; *wædlian to beg*: þearfa poor is commonly if not always used as a noun—a poor man *wana wantig* seems indeclinable.

---

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings *-er*, *-est* (*-oste*), and *-er*, *-est* (*-este*) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former oftener follow *a*, *e*, and *u*, the latter *e*, *i*, or *y*: see addit. note on p. 42

---

Page 25.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in *-e* and *-lice* (p. 70.) as *lang-e*, *lang-lice*; *strang-e*, *strang-lice*, *hræd-lice*, *heá-g-e*, *heá-lice*, *eáð-e*, *eáðe-lice*, *sceort-lice*, *sóft-e*, *yfel-e*, *lytl-e*.

---

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *worse-er* for *worse* is. *Least* is (*þý-*)*læ(-þe)*, *t* being added as in *against* &c. The ending *-most* has no connexion with *máest most*, though it also has become *-most*: our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative.

---

Page 27.—*Ye* is therefore the true nom., *you* the accus. &c. "If any man say ought to *you*, *ye* shall say."

---

Page 29.—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

Page 30.—*Þissere* and *þissera* are older forms than *þisse* and *þissa*.

Page 32.—The *á-* in *á-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73); *á* is *ever*, *aye*, *ái*, Goth. *áiw*, G. *je*, whence *aiw*, Goth. *áiwa*, L. *ævum*, *age*, *eternity*. *Á'-* or *ég-* (p. 65) gives a *general* sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand some one*; *á-hwæf some*, *any*, *every-where*, *á-hwænne some time*, *any time*, P. *some-when*, *any-when*: with the negative it becomes *ná never*, *no*; *ná-hwider no-whither*: *ná-wiht* is more regular than *nán-wiht*. *Á'wæter* and *áwæter* (if true readings) are contractions of *á-hwæter*, and = *ágæter*, *ég-hwæter*: *náwæter* is *ná-hwæter* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nother* *neither* has arisen from *either*.

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *án*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *sa m* is commoner for the article than *án*.

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called *Simple* from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or *Weak* as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed *Complex* from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or *Strong*, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *ceall-ian*, *καλ-ειν*, *cal-are to call*; *tem-ian*, *ταμ-ειν*, *dom-are to tame*; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere to shine*: complex; *graf-an*, *γραφ-ειν*; *to (en-)grave, write*; *brec-an*, *βρ-ειν*, *frang-ere, to break*; *tor-an*, *τρ-ειν*, *ter-ere to tear* &c.; *flów-an*, *flu-ere to flow*; *drag-an*, *-ere to draw, drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. used as regular, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs of time become simple, and this change is going on. *take, leap, weep, fare, wield*, &c. *n* *eye*

*break, dive, shove, row, flow, swallow, break* &c. from A. S. complex forms have become simple: others are in a fair way to do so, retaining only a complex imperf. or part. past, some of which are either gone or going out of use; as, *hung, hove, stood, shove, clomb, glode, bet, shod; wazen, hevon, laden, graven, shapen, washen, streon, helpen, bursten, foughten, swollen* &c.

G. *walten* (*to rule*), *wallen* (*to boil*), *säben* (*to sow*), *krähen* (*to crow*), *kauen* (*to chew*), *wachen* (*to watch*), *wathen* (*to wade*), *rosen* (*to rue*), *lachen* (*to laugh*), as also most of the E. synonyms, have become simple; others, as *backen* (*to bake*), *hauen* (*to hew*), *sieden* (*to seethe*) &c. are in the transition state. A few E. verbs from A. S. I. 2., and I. 3. have assumed imperfects (but not participles past) of a seeming complex form; as, *meet, met; lead, led; send, sent; build, built*; from *métan, lédan, sendan, byldan*. A very few A. S. verbs have both forms without change of meaning; as, *bringan; bringe, bróhte, bróht, or bringe, brang, brungen*; the latter however is rare.

---

Page 38.—Attention should be paid to the quantity of the complex or strong imperfects, both as compared with that of the present, and as to whether it is long throughout, or short throughout, or short in the first and third persons singular, and long in the 2nd, and the whole plural, or long in the first and third pers., and short in the rest. Thus II. 2. from presents some short, some long, and II. 3. from presents all short, make it long throughout, except some doubtful in the former; as, *healde; heóld, heólde* &c. *drage; dróh* &c. III. 1. has the present short, and the imperf. short throughout with a change of vowel; *binde; band, bunde, band, bunden*. II. 1. short in the pres. has the imperf. short and long; *brece; bræc, bráce, bræc, brácon*; except the few in ea; as, *geaf, geafe* &c., together with *com, come* &c., and *nam, name* &c. which are short throughout. III. 2. and III. 3. with long pres. have the imperf. long and short with a change of vowel; *drife; dráf, drife, dráf, drifon; clúfe; cleáf, clufe, cleáf, clufon*. Complex participles past are all short but some of II. 2.

---

Page 41.—Verbs in *-ig a n* (for *-ia n*) are often conjugated regularly



Page 30.—*Pissere* and *pissera* are older forms than *pisse* and *pissa*.

---

Page 32.—The *á-* in *á-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73); *á* is *ever, aye, así*, Goth. *áiw-*, G. *je*, whence *aiw*, Goth. *áiwa*, L. *ævum*, *aye, eternity*. *Á-* or *æg-* (p. 65) gives a *general* sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand some one*; *á-hwæf some, any-, every-where*, *á-hwæne some time, any time*, P. *some-when, any-when*: with the negative it becomes *ná never, no*; *ná-hwider no-whither*: *ná-wiht* is more regular than *nán-wiht*. *Á'wðer* and *áðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *á-hwæðer*, and = *ægðer*, *æg-hwæðer*: *náwðer* is *ná-hwæðer* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nothar neither* has arisen from *either*.

---

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *án*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses: in A. S. *sum* is commoner for the article than *án*.

---

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or Weak as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed Complex from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or Strong, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracta verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *ceall-ian*, καλ-ειν, *cal-are to call*; *tem-ian*, δαμ-ειν, *dom-are to tame*; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere to shine*: complex; *graf-an*, γραφ-ειν, *to (en-)grave, write*; *brec-an*, ρηγ-ειν, *frang-ere, to break*; *ter-an*, τειρ-ειν, *ter-ere to tear* &c.; *flów-an*, flu-ere *to flow*; *drag-an*, trah-ere *to draw, drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usually called regular, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs have in course of time become simple, and this change is still going on. Thus *baðe, sleep, leap, sweep, weep, fare, wield, fold, step, starve, creep, seek, lye*

has hái-háit, láí-láik, ráí-ród from háitan &c. Some only alter the vowel, as sceape, sceóp, where the Goth. has sái-akáp.

Page 54.—Verbs in -án form their part. pres. in -ánde; sleán, sleánde.

Page 58.—Wriðan is an exception to the general rule that complex verbs change ð into d in the 2nd pers. sing., and in the plural of the imperf., and in the past part.: see cweðan p. 50, weorðan p. 57, and seóðan p. 60, which are all regular.

Page 62.—Complex participles past sometimes agree like adjective with a noun, sometimes do not; as, Ða þing þe him ge-sende wæron *the things that were sent him*. Seó óðre naman wæs. *Tate hāten who by another name was hight Tate*.

The part. past in the pluperfect is sometimes governed in the accus. by the auxiliary hæbban; as, Ðá hig hæfdon hyra lof-sang ge-sungenne *when they had sung their song of praise*.

Page 63.—Un- sometimes, as in G., is not merely negative, but implies badness; un-þeáw *bad habit*, un-weder (G. un-ge-witter) *storm, bad weather*.

The prefix to- must be carefully distinguished from the preposition tó in composition; as, to-gán *to go asunder, separate*, tó-gán *to go to*; G. zer-gehen, zu-gehen: to- implies *division, dispersion of parts*, and hence often *destruction*.

Page 64.—For- gives in general a negative or bad sense, or is intensive, much like kara-; déman *to judge*, for-déman *to condemn*, κρινειν, kara-κρινειν, G. ur-theilen, ver-urtheilen; bernan *to burn*, for-bernan *to burn up, consume*, καειν, kara-καειν, G. brennen, ver-brennen; dón *to do, make*, for-dón *to un-do, ruin, destroy*; scyppan *to form*, for-scyppan *to trans-form, de-form*; for-fela *very many*. This prefix must not be confounded with the prepositions for and fore; (probably of the same origin, = L. pro); thus for-seón is *to over-look, de-spise*, G. ver-sehen; for-seón, fore-seón *to fore-see*, G. vor-sehen; for-gán *to for-go, do without*,

*perish*, G. *ver-gehen*, L. *per-ire*; *fore-gán* to *fore-go*, *go before*, G. *vor-gehen*, L. *præ-ire*. It is as wrong to write *fore-go* for *for-go*, as *fore-give* for *for-give*.

And- answers closely to *avri-*, denoting opposition, reciprocity &c.; and-*saca* *denier*; and-*wyrdan*, and-*ewarian*, *avri-spiu* to *answer*; and-*wlitan*, *avri βλεπειν*, to *gaze at*, *look in the face*.

The prefix *ge-* is in A. S. used oftener and more indiscriminately than in any kindred language old or new. Though originally conveying no notion of past time, it seems gradually to have acquired it, and to have become a kind of syllabic augment to imperfects, but especially to participles past, as in Dutch and German. In the formation of English it was by degrees dropt before all but participles past, where it first became *i-* or *y-*, and has since been lost altogether, surviving only as *a-* in some P. words. In G. and D. it is still in use before nouns, adjectives &c., but in general with a distinct effect on their meaning, referible to its original collective force. A. S. *ge-* sometimes denotes *the result of doing a thing*; as, *Ge-álóh þín fæder fêhða mæste* *thy father by striking avenged the greatest of feuds*. His *feorh ge-faran oððe ge-irnan* *to save his life by going or running (to a sanctuary)*.

---

Page 65.—The prefix *or-* (left out in the right place) denotes want of a thing; as, *or-mæte* *im-mense*, *measure-less*, *or-tráwian* to *de-spair*, *or-sorh* *care-less*, *se-cure*: it must not be confounded with *or-* in *or-eald* *very old*, (G. *ur-alt*), from *or*, *erd* *beginning*, *point*, connected with L. *or-lor*, *or-igo* &c.

The ending *-el*, *-ol*, answers sometimes to L. *-alum*; *gyrd-el*, L. *cing-alum*, *girdle*.

The primary meaning of *-ing* is *young*, and hence it forms patronymics, and terms of contempt &c.: *-ling* has been supposed to be derived from *-ing*.

---

Page 66.—Other feminines in *-en* are *menn-en* from *man*, G. *mann*, *männin*; *gyd-en* from *god*, G. *gott*, *gött-in*, D. *god*, *god-in*: in *-e*; *fyl-e*, *filly*, from *fela-a foal*; *wal-e* from *wealh* or *wal-a*, *Celt*, *stranger*; *webb-e* (or *webb-estre web-ster*), from *webb-a weaver*.

The ending *-estre* (like D. *-ster*) is feminine only, and the notion of thus forming nouns of contempt &c., as *pan-ster*, *trick-ster*, *road-ster* is modern.

The ending *dóm* is properly a noun (II. 2.) *doom*, *judgment*, *authority*, *dignity*: *hád* is also a noun (II. 2.) *state*, *condition*, *rank*, *Holy Orders*.

Page 67.—*-scipe* (not occurring alone) is related to *scapan*, (*seccapan*), *to shape, form, create*, and denotes *form, mode, condition*; *land-scapes*, or *land-ship*, (*land-scipe*) G. *land-schaft*, D. *land-schap*, should in rule be *land-ship*, unless borrowed, like a few other words, directly from the Dutch.

The adjective ending *-ig* answers to *ux-ec*, L. *-ic-us*.

Page 68.—A. S. *-isc* had often a bad sense, which E., G., and D. *-ish*, *-isch*, *-sch* almost always have, except when added to local names; the three former often contrast with *-lic*, *-like* or *-ly*, G. *-lich*, which convey a good or indifferent notion; as, *fole-isc vulgar* (Chaucer has *pepl-ish*), *fole-lic popular*; *eild-isc child-ish*, G. *kind-isch*, *eild-lic child-like*, G. *kind-lich*; compare also *mann-ish*, *man-like*, *man-ly*, G. *männ-isch*, *männ-lich*; *woman-ish*, *woman-ly*, G. *weib-isch*, *weib-lich*; *girl-ish*, *maiden-ly* &c.

While *-ol* (*-ul*) answers in form to L. *-ul-us*, in sense it is more like *-ax*, commonly denoting a wrong propensity; as, *sprece-ol*, *ewid-ol*, L. *loqu-ax*, *dic-ax talkative*, *evil-tongued*; *et-ol*, L. *ed-ax greedy*. Sometimes as in *sóð-sag-ol truth-telling*, *deóp-þanc-ol deep-thinking*, it expresses a good quality.

*-en* (G. *-ern*, *-en*) usually denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *stán-en of stone*, G. *stein-ern*; *treów-en tree*, *wood-en*; *gyld-en gold-en*, G. *gold-en*; *lin-en lin-en*, *of lin or flax*, G. *lein-en*; from *stán*, *treów*, *gold*, *lin*. Several words thus formed are now obsolete; *ston-en*, *brick-en* &c. are still in P. use.

*-cund* answers to L. *-cund-us*.

Some adjectives are formed in *-ed* or *-d* like simple participles past, as, *ge-hyrned horn-ed*, (G. *ge-hörn-t*); *ge-seeód shod* (G. *ge-sehuh-t*); the rest of the verb, if any, is here wanting.

Page 69.—c-, -n-, -s-, in these and the like verbs represent lost syllables; therefore *swin-s-ian* (*to make melody*) is no exception to the rule against *ns* in the same syllable; see p. 2. n. 1.

The verbal endings -ian and -an (-eiv, G. and D. -an) became in time -en and -e, the latter of which has in many cases been dropt, in all has lost its sound. Such verbs as *whit-en*, *black-en* are of modern use, *to white* and the like being the older form.

Page 71.—Other adverbs in common use are: *á aye*, *always*, *sæfre* (G. and D. immer) *ever*, *næfre* (G. and D. nimmer) *never*, *sædre* *straightway*, *recone instantly*, *eft-sona eft-soon*, *forth-with*, *endemes at length*, *þær-rihte* (*forð-rihte*) *forthwith*, *elles else*, *other-wise*, *elles-hwider else-whither*, *ellor elsewhere*, *þus* (D. *dus*) *thus*, *georne* (G. *gerne*) *earnestly*, *willingly*, *þearle very*, *exceedingly*, *geara well*, *accurately*, (*lyt*)-*hwon a little* (S. *a wheen*), *hugu* (*hwegu*), *hwæt-(hwyle)-hugu &c. somewhat*, *a little*, *þances gratis*, *á gnes þances of one's own accord*, *his &c. willan*, *un-willan with*, *against his &c. will*, *semninga suddenly*, *hrædinga quickly*, *áninga (áninga) alone*, *only*, *on bæc-ling backward*. *Sona* is construed with a genitive; as, *Sona þæs soon after that*. *Sona þæs wintres early in the winter*.

Page 72.—It seems likely that the first part of the word *Oxena-ford* is not from *oxa ox*, but from the Celtic root meaning *water*, *river*, (A. S. *wos is ooze*, *liquid*) which appears in ( ) , *Ex*, *Ax*, *Usk*, *Esk*, *Oise*, *Aisne*, *Yssel*, *Oxus*, and so otl n of rivers; and this is confirmed by *Ousn-ey* the n bourhood. *Ford of oxen* is however the strict meaning of the A. S. , and doubtless the one then attached to it; *Бѣг-вопос*, *Schw* -f *Swin-ford* and the like supply fair analogies.

*Ofer-* sometimes conveys the same idea as *for-*; *ofer-gitan* (= *for-gitan*) *to forget*, *ofer-hyegan* = *for-hyegan to despise*.

*Oþ-* beside its intensive force (p. 105. n. 2.) sometimes has a bad one; as, *me þincē me think*, *me oþ-þincē it repenteth me*, *I take it ill*.

Page 73.—Our prefix *a-* has in general sprung from the A. S. *an-* (*an-*, *a-*), and *on* is still sometimes used for it; as, *a-float*, A. S. *on-flote*; *a-live*, A. S. *on-life* (G. *am leben*); *a-two* (*in-two*), A. S. *on-twá*; *a-feared*, A. S. *a-fered*; O. *on flote*, *on life*, *on two*, also *on sleep*, *on row* &c. now *a-sleep* &c.; we yet say *on board*, or *a-board*, *on fire*, or *a-fire* and the like: see also p. 60—71, 73.

In some words *a-* is from A. S. *of-*; as, *of-dúne* (*a-dúne*, *a-dún*) *a-down*, *down* (= G. *berg-ab*); *of-þyrst* *a-thirst*; we say *too of kin* or *a-kin*; it is therefore not unlikely that in other cases A. S. *a-* may, as the sense would imply, have sprung from *of-*; thus *a-faran* *to depart*, *a-wendan* *to turn away*, *a-weorpan* *to cast off*, answer to G. *ab-fahren*, and G. and D. *ab-wenden*, *af-wenden*, *ab-werfen*, *af-verpen*: so *áro*, *áx'* became L. *ab*, and that in time *a*. Once or twice E. *a-* is from A. S. *ge-*; as *ge-lífe* (O. *y-like*), *a-like*; *ge-mang* (O. *e-mong*), *a-mong*.

Page 77.—Adjectives also take an abl. or dat. of the cause &c., which commonly stands first; as, *Iú-dédum fáh* *stained with (my) former deeds*. *Wundum wérig* *weary with wounds*.

Likewise of the person &c. by whom the action implied is done; as, *His freóndum or-wéne* *despaired of by his friends*. *Wurðfull þám cyningum* *to be honoured by kings*. *Un-a-seegend-líc ánigum* *unspeakable by any*.

Adjectives in general govern the object to which they have relation in the dative; as, *Ic eom ge-trýwe mínor hláf-orde* *I am true to my lord*. *He wæs me yrre* *he was angry with me*. *Dryhten wæs þám folce gram* (*the*) *Lord was wroth with the people*.

Adjectives denoting nearness also govern the dative; as, *A'n biscop þe him þá hendest wæs* *a bishop that was then nearest (handiest) to him*.

Some adverbs take the same case as the adjectives whence they are formed: *Nénig him ge-líce þæt dón meahste* *none could do that like him*.

Page 79.—The following verbs also govern the dative of the far ob-

ject: seegan *to say, tell*, bodian *to preach, announce*, beóðan *to offer*, and-wyrdan, and-swarian *to answer*, gifan *to give*, fer-gifan *to give away, forgive*, syllan *to give, sell* (of which examples need not be given), wið-metan *to compare, measure with*, ge-an-líclan *to liken, make like*; yrsian *to be angry with*, wt-filhan *to approach, apply to*, wíslan (wissian) *to guide, direct*, fore-wesan (L. *præ-esse*) *to govern, be over*, be-sárgian *to pity, be sorry for*, have a dative of the near object; losian *to be lost, escape from*, one of the person affected; as, Hire fmr is wið-meten fyrd-lícum truman *her going is compared to an army on the march*. Ic eom yslum and axum ge-an-lícod *I am made like cinders and ashes*. Se-þe yreað his bréðer *he that is angry with his brother*. Nô ic him þæs georne wt-fealh *I did not therefore willingly approach him*. Ðæt hig mihton þam feolce wel wissian *that they might guide the people well*. Mid-þý heó þá feala geara þissum mynstre fore-wæs *when she then many years had ruled this convent*. Þá be-sárgede he þære sorh-fullan méder *then pitied he the sorrowful mother*. Him losade án seeáp *he had lost one sheep*.

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative; as, Démað rihtne dóm *judge right judgment*.

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflexive way with the pronoun in the accusative: ge-biddan *to*; warnian *to be ware*, belgan *to be angry*, ge-wraðian *to be*; as, Ðonne þú þe ge-bidde *when thou prayest*. Warniað e fram mannum *be ware of men*. Warniað wið þa bóce *be ware of the scribes*. Þá bealh he hine *then was he an*. Ge belgað wið me *ye are angry with me*. Þá ge-wrað hine se arce-biscep Landfranc *then was the archb Lanfranc wroth*.

Likewise some compounds of seón; as, Hine &c. fer- (G. *sich ver-sehen*) *to err, commit an oversight, sin*. Gif he under-bme be-sáwe *if he should look back*.

Page 81.—3.—Wealdan, on-fón, éhtan, bíðan, and earn-  
ian sometimes govern the accusative.

---

Page 83.—On-þracian *to dread, feel horror at* governs the genitive like on-drædan; as, An-þraciende þæs un-ge-limpes *feeling horror at the misfortune*.

---

Page 87.—Be and tó sometimes govern the ablative; as, Be þý mæg ælc'mon wítan *by that may each man know*. Tó-þý-þæt (= tó-þón-þæt) *in order that*. Tó-hwý *why?*

As æt is sometimes *to*, so is tó sometimes *at*; the two are now and then confounded in E., and G. *zu* stands for both. Tó and æt (the latter in composition often) sometimes mean *from*, the former especially with *wilnian* and *sécan*; as, Ealle tó þe mtes *wilnian* *all from thee desire food*. Manna ge-hwylc se-þe séceð tó him *every man that seeketh from him*. He þæt ful ge-peah æt Wealh-þeón *he took the cup from (at the hand of) Wealh-theó*.

Tó meaning *motion to*, has sometimes, though seldom, an accusative: He fór tó Samariam þæt land *he went to the land of Samaria*.

---

Page 88.—Tó-emnes (a rare word) rather *by, along-side, over-against* than *along*, is from *efn* (*efn, emn*) *even, equal*; on-efn (*-emn*) is the same; Him on-efn ligeð ealdor-ge-winna *by him lieth (his) deadly foe*. Emn-, em- are common in composition; emn-lang (G. *eben* (so) *lang*) *of the same length*; em-leóf (G. *eben* (so) *lieb*) *equally dear*; em-þeów *fellow-slave*.

---

Page 90.—Innon, úton, and úppon should not be divided, -on (-an) being here only an ending and not the preposition *on*, serving in the two last to change the adverb into a preposition.

---

Page 93.—Ðenden *while* sometimes has a subjunctive; as, Ðenden hit hát sý *while it be hot*.



Page 96.—For-standan (or fore-standan) *to defend, stand before*, likewise for-standan (O. ver-stehen) *to understand govern the accusative*; as, Hine God for-stód him God defended.

---

Page 96.—Other conjunctions are swá-same-swá *the same as—, in like manner as—*, nú-læs þæt án ac— *not (that) only but—*, nates-hwón *by no means*, nóht-þón-læs *never-(nought)-theless*, gea yea, ná nay, gese yes, nese no, næs (næ) not, huru moreover, chiefly, huru-þinga *at least*, þæs-pe since, after that, because, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) *how*, þæs(-for) *for that, therefore*, gen, gena yet.

Comp. οὐκ ἔχομεν εἰ μὴ—we have (not) but—, one only of the many instances of likeness between the Gr. and A. S. syntax.

Weorðe too may be either expressed or understood; as, Wá (weorðe) þám men! *wo worth the man!*

---

Page 97.—Lo! has no more to do with look than O. gif has with gifan: our vulgar law! and lawk! may also be derived from lá!

---

Page 98.—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say; this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfric was a common name; among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch.

---

Page 133.—Teóhhian (from teóh, p. 152. n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boëthius, where its meaning is not very clear.

---

Page 140.—Tó- in tó-geanes sometimes does not rime (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations: to- on the other hand never rimes.

THE END.

# VALUABLE AND INTERESTING BOOKS,

PUBLISHED OR SOLD BY

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,

36, SOHO SQUARE, LONDON.

**A** Compendious Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary, by the Rev. JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D., Anglo-Saxon Professor in the University of Oxford, &c. 8vo. *closely printed in treble columns, cloth, 12s*

This may be considered quite a new work from the author's former Dictionary: it has been entirely remodelled and enlarged, bringing it down to the present state of Anglo-Saxon literature both at home and abroad.

**Anglo-Saxon Delectus; serving as a first Class-Book to the Language.** By the Rev. W. BARNES, B.D., of St. John's Coll. Camb. 12mo. *cloth, 2s 6d*

"To those who wish to possess a critical knowledge of their own Native English, some acquaintance with Anglo-Saxon is indispensable; and we have never seen an introduction better calculated than the present to supply the wants of a beginner in a short space of time. The declensions and conjugations are well stated, and illustrated by references to the Greek, Latin, French and other languages. A philosophical spirit pervades every part. The Delectus consists of short pieces on various subjects, with extracts from Anglo-Saxon History and the Saxon Chronicle. There is a good Glossary at the end."—*Athenaeum*, Oct. 30, 1849.

**The Anglo-Saxon Version of the Life of St. Guthlac, Hermit of Croyland.** Printed for the first time, from a MS. in the Cottonian Library, with a Translation and Notes, by CHARLES WYCLIFFE GOODWIN, M.A., Fellow of Catherine Hall, Cambridge, 12mo. *cloth, 5s*

**An Introduction to Anglo-Saxon Reading; comprising Ælfrie's Homily on the Birthday of St. Gregory, with a copious Glossary, &c.** by L. LANGLEY, F.L.S. 12mo. *cloth, 2s 6d*

Ælfrie's Homily is remarkable for beauty of composition, and interesting as setting forth Augustine's mission to the "Land of the Angles."

**Analecta Anglo-Saxonica.—Selections, in Prose and Verse, from Anglo-Saxon Literature, with an Introductory Ethnological Essay, and Notes, Critical and Explanatory,** by LOUIS F. KLIPSTEIN, of the University of Giessen, 2 thick vols. post 8vo. *cloth, 12s (original price, 18s)*

Containing an immense body of information on a language which is now becoming more fully appreciated, and which contains fifteen-twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman, therefore, altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon, can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue; while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may, in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with the modern German.

**Anglo-Saxon Version of the Hexameron of St Basil, and the Anglo-Saxon Remains of St. Basil's Admonitio ad Filium Spiritualem; now first printed from MSS. in the Bodleian Library, with a Translation and Notes,** by the Rev. H. W. NORMAN, 8vo. **SECOND EDITION, enlarged, sewed, 4s**

**Anglo-Saxon Version of the Holy Gospels.** Edited from the original MSS. by BENJAMIN THORPE, F.S.A., post 8vo. cloth, 8s (*original price, 12s*)

**Anglo-Saxon Version of the Story of Apollonius of Tyre;**—upon which is founded the Play of Pericles, attributed to Shakespeare;—from a MS., with a Translation and Glossary, by BENJAMIN THORPE, 12mo. cloth, 4s 6d (*original price, 6s*)

**Analecta Anglo-Saxonica.**—A Selection in Prose and Verse, from Anglo-Saxon Authors of various ages, with a Glossary, by BENJAMIN THORPE, F.S.A. a new edition, with corrections and improvements, post 8vo. cloth, 8s (*original price, 12s*)

**Popular Treatises on Science, written during the Middle Ages, in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman, and English.** Edited by THOS. WRIGHT, M.A., 8vo. cloth, 3s

*Contents:*—An Anglo-Saxon Treatise on Astronomy, of the Tenth Century, now first published from a MS. in the British Museum, with a Translation; *Libro des Creatures*, by Philippo de Thaan, now first printed with a translation, (extremely valuable to Philologists, as being the earliest specimens of Anglo-Norman remaining, and explanatory of all the symbolical signs in early sculpture and painting); the Bestiary of Philippo de Thaan, with a translation; Fragments on Popular Science from the Early English Metrical Lives of the Saints, (the earliest piece of the kind in the English language.)

**Fragment of Ælfric's Anglo-Saxon Grammar, Ælfric's Glossary, and a Poem on the Soul and Body of the XIIth Century,** discovered among the Archives of Worcester Cathedral, by Sir THOMAS PHILLIPS, Bart., folio, PRIVATELY PRINTED, sewed, 1s 6d

**A Philological Grammar, grounded upon English,** and formed from a comparison of more than Sixty Languages. Being an Introduction to the Science of Grammars of all Languages, especially English, Latin, and Greek, by the Rev. W. BARNES, B.D., of St. John's College, Cambridge, author of "Poems in the Dorset Dialect," "Anglo-Saxon Delectus," &c. &c. pp. 322, cloth, 9s

**Biographia Britannica Literaria, or Biography of Literary Characters of Great Britain and Ireland, ANGLO SAXON PERIOD,** by THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c., Membre de l'Institut de France, thick 8vo. cloth, 6s (*original price, 12s*)

---

**THE ANGLO-NORMAN PERIOD,** thick 8vo. cloth, 6s (*original price, 12s*)

Published under the superintendence of the Council of the Royal Society of Literature There is no work in the English Language which gives the reader such a comprehensive and connected History of the Literature of these periods.

**Philological Proofs of the Original Unity and Recent Origin of the Human Race, derived from a Comparison of the Languages of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America,** by A. J. JOURNES, 8vo cloth, 6s (*original price, 12s 6d*)

Printed at the suggestion of Dr. Fritchard, to whose works it will be found a supplement.

**Essays on the Literature, Popular Superstitions, and History of England in the MIDDLE AGES, by THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., 2 vols. post 8vo. elegantly printed, cloth, 16s**

*Contents:*—Essay I. Anglo-Saxon Poetry. II. Anglo-Norman Poetry. III. Chansons de Geste, or Historical Romances of the Middle Ages. IV. On Proverbs and Popular Sayings. V. On the Anglo-Latin Poets of the Twelfth Century. VI. Abelard and the Scholastic Philosophy. VII. On Dr. Grimm's German Mythology. VIII. On the National Fairy Mythology of England. IX. On the Popular Superstitions of Modern Greece, and their connection with the English. X. On Friar Rush, and the Frolicsome Elves. XI. On Dunlop's History of Fiction. XII. On the History and Transmission of Popular Stories. XIII. On the Poetry of History. XIV. Adventures of Hereward the Son. XV. The Story of Eustace the Monk. XVI. The History of Fulke Fitzwarine. XVII. On the Popular Cycle of Robin-Hood Ballads. XVIII. On the Conquest of Ireland by the Anglo-Normans. XIX. On Old English Political Songs. XX. On the Scottish Poet Daubar.

**Literature of the Troubadours. Histoire de la Poésie Provençale, par M. FAURIEL, publié par J. MOUT. Membre de l'Institut de France, 3 vols. 8vo. new, sewed, 14s (original price, £1. 4s)**

A valuable work, and forms a fit companion to the Literary Histories of Hallam, Tegner, and Ginguenê. J. R. S. is the only agent in London for the sale of it, at the above moderate price.

**Skelton's (John, Poet Laureat to Henry VIII.)**

Poetical Works: the Bowge of Court, Colin Clout, Why come ye not to Court? (his celebrated Satire on Wolsey), Philip Sparrow, Elinour Rummynge, &c.; with Notes and Life, by the Rev. A. DYCE, 2 vols. 8vo. cloth, 16s (original price, £1. 12s)

"The power, the strangeness, the volubility of his language, the audacity of his satire, and the perfect originality of his manner, made Skelton one of the most extraordinary writers of any age or country."—*Southey*.

"Skelton is a curious, able, and remarkable writer, with strong sense, a vein of humour, and some imagination; he had a wonderful command of the English language, and one who was styled, in his turn, by as great a scholar as ever lived (Erasmus), 'the light and ornament of Britain.' He indulged very freely in his writings in censures on monks and Dominicans: and, moreover, had the hardihood to reflect, in no very mild terms, on the manners and life of Cardinal Wolsey. We cannot help considering Skelton as an ornament of his own time, and a benefactor to those who come after him."

**A New Life of Shakespeare, including many particulars respecting the Poet and his Family, never before published, by J. O. HALLIWELL, F.R.S., in one handsome vol., 8vo. illustrated with 76 engravings on wood, of objects, most of which are new, from drawings by FAIRHOLT, cloth, 15s**

This work contains upwards of forty documents respecting Shakespeare and his Family, never before published, besides numerous others indirectly illustrating the Poet's Biography. All the anecdotes and traditions concerning Shakespeare are here, for the first time collected, and much new light is thrown on his personal history, by papers exhibiting him as selling Malt and Stone, &c. Of the seventy-six engravings which illustrate the volume, more than fifty have never before been engraved.

It is the only Life of Shakespeare to be bought separately from his Works.

**Archæological Index to Remains of Antiquity of the Celtic, Romano-British, and Anglo-Saxon Periods, by JOHN YONGE AKERMAN, Fellow and Secretary to the Society of Antiquaries, 8vo. illustrated with numerous engravings, comprising upwards of five hundred objects, cloth, 15s**

"One of the first wants of an incipient Antiquary, is the facility of comparison, and here it is furnished him at one glance. The plates, indeed, form the most valuable part of the book, both by their number and the judicious selection of types and examples which they contain. It is a book which we can, on this account, safely and warmly recommend to all who are interested in the antiquities of their native land."—*Literary Gazette*.

**Ancient Coins of Cities and Princes, geographically arranged and described, HISPANIA, GALLIA, BRITANNIA,** by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., 8vo. *with engravings of many hundred coins from actual examples, cloth, 10s*

**Introduction to the Study of Ancient and Modern Coins,** by J. Y. AKERMAN, *Secretary of the Society of Antiquaries, scap.* 8vo. *with numerous wood engravings from the original coins, (an excellent introductory book), cloth, 6s 6d*

CONTENTS: SECT. 1. Origin of Coinage.—Greek Regal Coins. 2. Greek Civic Coins. 3. Greek Imperial Coins. 4. Origin of Roman Coinage—Consular Coins. 5. Roman Imperial Coins. 6. Roman British Coins. 7. Ancient British Coinage. 8. Anglo-Saxon Coinage. 9. English Coinage from the Conquest. 10. Scotch Coinage. 11. Coinage of Ireland. 12. Anglo-Gallic Coins. 13. Continental Money in the Middle Ages. 14. Various representations of Coinage. 15. Forgeries in Ancient and Modern Times. 16. Table of Prices of English Coins realized at Public Sales.

**Tradesmen's Tokens struck in London and its Vicinity, from 1648 to 1671, described from the originals in the British Museum, &c.** by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., 8vo. *with 8 plates of numerous examples, cloth, 15s*—LARGE PAPER, in 4to. *cloth, £1. 1s*

This work comprises a list of nearly three thousand Tokens, and contains occasional illustrative topographical and antiquarian notes on persons, places, streets, old taverns and coffee-house signs, &c. &c. with an introductory account of the causes which led to the adoption of such a currency.

**Coins of the Romans relating to Britain, described and illustrated,** by J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A. SECOND EDITION, greatly enlarged, 8vo. *with plates and woodcuts, 10s 6d*

The "Prix de Numismatique" was awarded by the French Institute to the author for this work.

"Mr. Akerman's volume contains a notice of every known variety, with copious illustrations, and is published at a very moderate price; it should be consulted, not merely for those particular coins, but also for facts most valuable to all who are interested in the Romano-British History."—*Archæological Journal*.

**Numismatic Illustrations of the Narrative Portions of the New Testament,** by J. Y. AKERMAN, 8vo. *numerous woodcuts from the original coins in various public and private collections, cloth, 5s*

"The New Testament has, it appears, in the compass of the Gospel and Acts, no less than 33 allusions to the coinage of Greece, Rome, and Judæa; and these beautifully engraved, and learnedly described, give Mr. Akerman an opportunity of sowing the good seeds of truth in the way of his peculiar avocation."—*Church of England Journal*.

**English Surnames. An Essay on Family Nomenclature, Historical, Etymological, and Humorous; with several illustrative Appendices,** by MARK ANTONY LOWER, M.A., 2 vols. post 8vo. THIRD EDITION, ENLARGED, *woodcuts, cloth, 12s*

This new and much improved Edition, besides a great enlargement of the Chapters contained in the previous editions, comprises several that are entirely new, together with Notes on Scottish, Irish, and Norman Surnames. The "Additional Prolusions," besides the articles on Rebuses, Allusive Arms, and the Roll of Battle Abbey, contain dissertations on Inn signs, and Remarks on Christian Names: with a copious INDEX of many thousand Names. These features render "English Surnames" rather a new work than a new edition.

**Remains of Pagan Saxondom, principally from Tumuli in England.** Drawn from the Originals. Described and illustrated by J. Y. AKERMAN, Fellow and Secretary of the Society of Antiquaries, 4to. 40 FINE COLOURED PLATES, half morocco, £2. 12s 6d

The plates are admirably executed by Mr. Basire, and coloured under the direction of the Author. It is a work well worthy the notice of the Archaeologist.

**Curiosities of Heraldry, with Illustrations from Old English Writers,** by MARK ANTONY LOWER, M.A., author of "Essays on English Surnames," with illuminated Title-page, and numerous engravings from designs by the author, 8vo. cloth, 14s

"Mr. Lower's work is both curious and instructive, while the manner of its treatment is so inviting and popular, that the subject to which it refers, which many have hitherto had too good reason to consider meagre and unprofitable, assumes, under the hands of the writer, the novelty of fiction with the importance of historical truth."—*Athenaeum*.

**A Grammar of British Heraldry, consisting of "Blazon" and "Marshalling,"** with an Introduction on the Rise and Progress of Symbols and Ensigns, by the Rev. W. SLOANE EVANS, B.A., 8vo. with 26 plates, comprising upwards of 400 figures, cloth, 5s

One of the best Introductions ever published.

**Genealogical and Heraldic History of the Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies of England, Ireland, and Scotland,** by J. BURKE, Esq., medium 8vo. SECOND EDITION, 638 closely printed pages, in double columns, with about 1000 arms engraved on wood, fine portrait of JAMES I. cloth, 10s (original price, £1. 8s)

This work engaged the attention of the author for several years, comprises nearly a thousand families, many of them amongst the most ancient and eminent in the kingdom, each carried down to its representative or representatives still existing, with elaborate and minute details of the alliances, achievements, and fortunes; generation after generation, from the earliest to the latest period.

**Handbook to the Library of the British Museum,** containing a brief History of its Formation, and of the various Collections of which it is composed; Descriptions of the Catalogues in present use; Classed Lists of the Manuscripts, &c.; and a variety of Information indispensable for Literary persons; with some Account of the principal Public Libraries in London, by RICHARD SIMS, of the Department of Manuscripts, Compiler of the "Index to the Heralds' Visitations," small 8vo. pp. 438, with map and plan, cloth, 5s

It will be found a very useful work to every literary person or public institution in all parts of the world.

What Mr. Antonio Panizzi, the keeper of the department of printed books, says *might be done*, Mr. Richard Sims, of the department of manuscripts, says *shall be done*. His Handbook to the Library of the British Museum is a very comprehensive and instructive volume. I have the sixtieth edition of "Synopsis of the Contents of the British Museum" before me—I cannot expect to see a sixtieth edition of the *Hand-book*, but it deserves to be placed by the side of the *Synopsis*, and I venture to predict for it a wide circulation.

*Mr. Bolton Corney, in Notes and Queries, No. 313*

**Wiltshire Tales, illustrative of the Manners, Customs, and Dialect of that and adjoining Counties,** by JOHN YONGE AKERMAN, 12mo. cloth, 2s 6d

**Contributions to Literature, Historical, Antiquarian, and Metrical, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, M.A., F.S.A.,** author of "Essays on English Surnames," "Curiosities of Heraldry," &c., post 8vo. *woodcuts, cloth, 7s 6d*

**CONTENTS:—**1. On Local Nomenclature. 2. On the Battle of Hastings, an Historical Essay. 3. The Lord Dacre, his mournful end; a Ballad. 4. Historical and Archæological Memoir on the Iron Works of the South of England, *with numerous illustrations*. 5. Winchelsea's Deliverance, or the Stout Abbot of Battayle; in Three Fyttes. 6. The South Downs, a Sketch; Historical, Anecdotal, and Descriptive. 7. On Yew Trees in Churchyards. 8. A Lyttel Geste of a Greate Ecclie; a pleasant Ballade. 9. A Discourse of Genealogy. 10. An Antiquarian Pilgrimage in Normandy, *with woodcuts*. 11. Miscellaneous, &c. &c. &c.

**Retrospective Review (New Series);** consisting of Criticisms upon, Analysis of, and Extracts from curious, useful, valuable, and scarce Old Books, 2 vols. 8vo. *cloth, 10s 6d*

These two volumes form a good companion to the old series of the *Retrospective*, in 16 vols.; the articles are of the same length and character.

**The Nursery Rhymes of England, collected chiefly from Oral Tradition.** Edited by J. O. HALLIWELL. The FIFTH EDITION, enlarged, with many Designs, by W. B. SCOTT, *Director of the School of Design, Newcastle-on-Tyne*, 12mo. *cloth, gilt leaves, 4s 6d*

**Popular Rhymes and Nursery Tales, with Historical Elucidations,** by J. O. HALLIWELL, 12mo. *cloth, 4s 6d*

This very interesting volume on the traditional Literature of England, is divided into Nursery Antiquities, Fireside Nursery Stories, Game Rhymes, Alphabet Rhymes, Riddle Rhymes, Nature Songs, Proverb Rhymes, Pieces, and Families, Superstition Rhymes, Custom Rhymes and Nursery Songs; *a large number are here printed for the first time*. It may be considered a sequel to the preceding article.

**Old Songs and Ballads.—A Little Book of Song** and Ballads, gathered from Ancient Music Books, MS. and Printed, by E. F. RIMBAULT, LL.D., F.S.A., &c., *elegantly printed in post 8vo. pp. 240, half morocco, 6s*

"Dr. Rimbault has been at some pains to collect the words of the Songs which used to delight the Rustics of former times."—*Atlas*.

**Anecdotes and Characters of Books and Men.**

Collected from the Conversation of Mr. Pope and other eminent Persons of his Time, by the Rev. JOSEPH SPENCE, with Notes, Life, &c. by S. W. SINGER. The second edition, fcap. 8vo. *portraits, elegantly printed by Whittingham, cloth, 6s*

"The 'Anecdotes' of kind-hearted Mr. Spence, the friend of Pope, is one of the best books of one in the English language."—*Critic*.

**The Table Talk of John Selden.** With a Biographical Preface and Notes by S. W. SINGER, fcap. 8vo. *third edition, portraits, cloth, 6s*

There are few volumes of its size so pregnant with sense, combined with the most profound learning; it is impossible to open it without finding some important fact or discussion, something practically useful and applicable to the business of life. *Coleridge* says, "There is more weighty ballion sense in this book than I ever found in the number of pages in any uninspired writer."

**Life, Progresses, and Rebellion of James, Duke of Monmouth, &c. to his Capture and Execution, with a full account of the "Bloody Assize," under Judge Jefferies, and copious Biographical Notices, by GEORGE ROBERTS, 2 vols. post 8vo. plates and cuts, cloth, 7s 6d (original price, £1. 4s)**

Two very interesting volumes, particularly so to those connected with the West of England.

**A Dictionary of Old English Plays, existing either in print or in manuscript, from the earliest times to the close of the 17th century, including also Notices of Latin Plays written by English Authors during the same period, with particulars of their Authors, Plots, Characters, &c. by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, Esq., F.R.S., 8vo. cloth, 12s**

\*. Twenty-five copies have been printed on thick paper, price £1. 1s.

**Anecdota Literaria; a Collection of Short Poems in English, Latin, and French, illustrative of the Literature and History of England in the XIIIth Century; and more especially of the Condition and Manners of the different Classes of Society, by T. WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c. 8vo. cloth, only 250 copies printed, 5s**

**Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words, Obsolete Phrases, Proverbs, and Ancient Customs, from the Reign of Edward I., by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, F.R.S., F.S.A., &c. 2 vols. 8vo. containing upwards of 1000 pages, closely printed in double columns, cloth, a new and cheaper edition, 15s**

It contains above 50,000 words (embodying all the known scattered glossaries of the English language), forming a complete key for the reader of our old Poets, Dramatists, Theologians, and other authors, whose works abound with allusions, of which explanations are not to be found in ordinary Dictionaries and books of reference. Most of the principal Archaisms are illustrated by examples selected from early inedited MSS. and rare books, and by far the greater portion will be found to be original authorities.

**A Glossary; or, Collection of Words, Phrases, Customs, Proverbs, &c., illustrating the Works of English Authors, particularly Shakespeare and his Contemporaries, by ROBERT NARES, Archdeacon of Stafford, &c., a new Edition, with considerable Additions, both of Words and Examples, by JAMES O. HALLIWELL, F.R.S., and THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., 2 thick vols. 8vo. cloth, £1. 8s**

The Glossary of Archdeacon Nares is by far the best and most useful work we possess for explaining and illustrating the obsolete language and the customs and manners of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, and it is quite indispensable for the readers of the literature of the Elizabethan period. The additional words and examples are distinguished from those in the original text by a † prefixed to each. The work contains between five and six thousand additional examples, the result of original research, not merely supplementary to Nares, but to all other compilations of the kind.

**A Glossary of Northamptonshire Words and Phrases; with examples of their colloquial use, with illustrations, from various Authors; to which are added, the Customs of the County, by Miss A. E. BAKER, 2 vols. post 8vo. cloth, 16s (original price, £1. 4s)**

"We are under great obligations to the lady, sister to the local historian of Northamptonshire, who has occupied her time in producing this very capital Glossary of Northamptonshire provincialisms."—*Examiner*.



**Poems of Rural Life, in the Dorset Dialect, with a Dissertation and Glossary, by the Rev. WM. BARNES, B.D., second edition, enlarged and corrected, royal 12mo. cloth, 10s**

**Hwomely Rhymes; a Second Collection of Poems in the Dorset Dialect, by the Rev. W. BARNES, royal 12mo. cloth, 5s 1859**

"The author is a genuine poet, and it is delightful to catch the pure breath of song in verses which assert themselves only as the modest vehicle of rare words and Saxon inflections. We have no intention of setting up the Dorset patois against the more extended provincialism of Scotland, still less of comparing the Dorsetshire poet with the Scotch; yet we feel sure that these poems would have delighted the heart of Burns, that many of them are not unworthy of him, and that (at any rate) his best productions cannot express a more cordial sympathy with external nature, or a more loving interest in human joys and sorrows."—*Literary Gazette*.

**Dialect of South Lancashire; or, Tim Bobbin's Tummus and Meary, revised and corrected, with his Rhymes, and an enlarged Glossary of Words and Phrases, chiefly used by the Rural Population of the Manufacturing Districts of South Lancashire, by SAMUEL BARNFORD, 12mo. second edition, cloth, 3s 6d**

**Barnes (Rev. W.) Notes on Ancient Britain and the Britons, fcap. 8vo. cloth, 3s**

"A little book in exactly inverse proportion to its great merit; its contents might have been amplified into a huge octavo. As it is, it is an invaluable manual; and to any thoughtful individual, disposed to the preparation of a series of lectures on our early history, it would be a difficult task to point out a more suggestive book in the English tongue."—*Manchester Advertiser*.

**Views of Labour and Gold, by the Rev. W. BARNES, B.D., Author of "Poems in the Dorset Dialect," "Notes on Ancient Britain," &c. 12mo. cloth, 3s**

"Mr. Barnes is a reader and a thinker. He has a third and a conspicuous merit—his style is perfectly lucid and simple. If the humblest reader of ordinary intelligence desired to follow out the process by which societies are built up and held together, he has but to betake himself to the study of Mr. Barnes's epitome. The title, 'Views of Labour and Gold,' cannot be said to indicate the scope of the Essays, which open with pictures of primitive life, and pass on, through an agreeable and diversified range of topics, to considerations of the rights, duties, and interests of Labour and Capital, and to the inquiry—what constitutes the utility, wealth, and positive well-being of a Nation? Subjects of this class are rarely handled with so firm a grasp and such light and artistic manipulations." *Athenæum*.

**Biblia Pauperum, reproduced in facsimile from one of the Copies in the British Museum, with an Historical and Bibliographical Introduction by J. PH. BERNJEAU, royal 4to. with 40 plates, half morocco, £2. 2s**

As a specimen of the earliest Woodcuts, and of printed Block-books, destined to supersede the Manuscripts anterior to the valuable Invention of Gutenberg, the "Biblia Pauperum" (executed between 1430 and 1480) is well worthy the attention of the Amateur of the Fine Arts, as well as of the Bibliographer. It is printed uniformly with Mr. S. Leigh Sothely's "Principia Typographica."

28

3327









THE BORROWER WILL BE CHARGED  
THE COST OF OVERDUE NOTIFICATION  
IF THIS BOOK IS NOT RETURNED TO  
THE LIBRARY ON OR BEFORE THE LAST  
DATE STAMPED BELOW.

NOV - 5 1977

5863958

CANCELLED

JUL 6 1978

AUG 10 1994

CANCELLED

